

REMARKS ON SIMILES IN SANSKRIT LITERATURE

BY

J. GONDA
UTRECHT



LEIDEN
E. J. BRILL
1949

Iam A D MCMXXXIX hoc volumen iuri publico datum erat Incendio, quo Vada Gelriae vicus Maus A D MCMXL est deletus, super-
fuerunt tantum species XIII A D MCMIL imago eius voluminis
photographice facta prelo est data

Copyright 1949 by E J Brill, Leiden, Holland

*All rights reserved, including the rights to translate or to reproduce
this book or parts thereof in any form*

PRINTED IN THE NETHERLANDS

CONTENTS

Introduction	p 1
§ 1 'Primitive' men and similes Similes which seem to be the only possible way of expression	11
§ 2 Simile 'for economical reasons'	14
§ 3 Type 'something like '	15
§ 4 Simile for motives of tact, etc	15
§ 5 Supposition or cautious conclusion	16
§ 6 <i>iva + bhāti</i>	16
§ 7 Similes which bring about a connection with familiar facts	17
§ 8 Similes underlining 'das sinnlich Eindrucksvolle'	18
§ 9 Expressive and familiar similes	19
§ 10 Hyperbolic similes	21
§ 11 Intensifying additions and exaggerations	21
§ 12 Fixed combinations complementary similes	21
§ 13 Fixed combinations historical and mythological cha- racters	24
§ 14 Epexegetical and expressive additions, clichés	25
§ 15 Similes 'instead of an adverb'	28
§ 16 Similes helping to promote 'Anschaulichkeit'	31
§ 17 More elaborated instances of this type	34
§ 18 Affective character, 'Gefuhlswert'	36
§ 19 Upamānas with affective character	38
§ 20 Knowledge of the culture of the people is necessary	39
§ 21 Illustration by means of a comparison to human cir- cumstances	40
§ 22 Allusions	40
§ 23 Comic and nonsensical similes	41
§ 24 Similes with 'sound-figures'	43
§ 25 Adnomination distributed over upamāna and upameya	45
§ 26 Artificial instances belonging to this type	47
§ 27 Similes occupying the first place in a sentence	47

§ 28	The same, in post-Vālmikian works	50
§ 29	The same, suggesting	52
§ 30	Praising and illogical exaggerations	53
§ 31	Climax	54
§ 32	The rule of the 'wachsende Glieder'	55
§ 33	Similes at the end of a hymn, argumentation or canto	55
§ 34	Similes at culminating points	56
§ 35	Accumulation of similes	57
§ 36	Accumulation with imperatives in 'magical' verses, etc	60
§ 37	Accumulation and prismatic diction in the epics	62
§ 38	Lovers and similes	66
§ 39	Human life and nature	66
§ 40	Similes to be explained from relations between man and nature	69
§ 41	The same, in the works of poets	70
§ 42	Magic, similes expressing in words a magical act	71
§ 43	An event or a phenomenon in nature as a parallel act	74
§ 44	Divine power invoked	76
§ 45	Similes borrowed from mythology etc in magical texts	77
§ 46	Mythological similes without magical force	79
§ 47	Oaths	80
§ 48	Proverbial and petrified similes	81
§ 49	Didactic and elucidating similes, in Samhitās and Brāhmanas	84
§ 50	The same, in Upanisads	88
§ 51	The same, in Buddhist literature	90
§ 52	The same, in Dharmaśāstras, epics, kāvya	92
§ 53	Similes which make the mind dwell on the subject, amplifications, independent, 'Homeric' similes	94
§ 54	Plastic similes, similes deepening our feelings	96
§ 55	<i>Yathā—evā(evam)</i> -similes	98
§ 56	<i>Iva</i> -similes	103
§ 57	Amplifications, prolepsis, combinations, blending, etc	104
§ 58	Suspense, repetitions, copulative similes, etc	105
§ 59	Elaboration of similes in classical texts, ornaments, artificial plays on sounds	105

§ 60	Comparisons in connection with ambiguity	106
§ 61	Verse-fillers	108
§ 62	Equalizations and identifications, metaphors	108 •
§ 63	The use of the same comparison in different texts	111
§ 64	The study of similes	113
§ 65	Collections of similes	114
§ 66	Poetical similes	116
§ 67	Common language and poetical fiction	118
§ 68	Artificial similes, used as ornaments	119

INTRODUCTION

In a paper published in March 1939 in the 'Thomas-Festschrift'¹ I set forth the results of an inquiry into the meaning of the Sanskrit word *alamkāra*. As is well known, this word is usually translated by "ornament, i.e. that which adorns a person or a thing, that which adds grace or beauty to him or to it". A special use is found in the history of Sanskrit literature, in the first line in the 'poetica' "embellishment in poetry, in the art of writing poetically, adornment of style". The question, how far this traditional explanation, as many other traditional translations, needs correction ought, to my mind, to be answered affirmatively. After an examination of a great number of texts in early Sanskrit literature, it appeared to me that a more original meaning may still often be recognized, viz *alamkāra*-, *alamkarana*- "making suitable, equal to, a match for, fit, invigorating, adding strength to, making such as is required for, fitting a thing out in such a way that it answers its purpose, etc." Hence the word *alamkāra* is used many a time to denote magical objects that are to strengthen a person or a thing, amulets and the like. And as suchlike objects are often at the same time ornaments, the word *alamkāra* may, in European languages, also be rendered by 'ornament, das Schmucken, Schmuck etc.' In modern Western culture and in the languages of this culture we distinguish the magico-religious side from the aesthetical one, in a 'primitive culture'² people set upon the same thing at the same time a magical or religious and an aesthetical value, there the distinction does not exist or it exists only in a vague and undeveloped way.

But, if this is the original meaning of *alamkāra*, if I am right in contending that this meaning was not, or not merely an 'aesthetical one' (in our terminology), how about the use of this word in

¹ The meaning of the word *alamkāra*, in A Volume of Eastern and Indian Studies in honour of F. W. THOMAS, Bombay, 1939, pp 97 ff

² For this term see my Stilistische Studie over Atharvaveda I—VII Wageningen 1938, p. 19, n. 4

the special domain of Indian poetics, which have even borrowed their name, *alamkārasāstra*-, from it? Did the term *alamkāra* (*śāstra*-) arise at a moment or in an environment, in which *alamkāra* had a preponderating 'aesthetical' value and are we allowed to go on translating it by 'poetical adornments' and are we at liberty to assume that this was always its exact meaning? Or did at least those who used the term for the first time in the special domain after all attribute something else, something additional to it?

Now it is clear that we may, for the present, put on one side the works of the younger theorists on poetics and style here *alamkārasāstra* is an established 'science', which, in fact, teaches and prescribes many a thing that omnium consensu aims at a certain kind of aesthetical effect, and gives definitions such as *saundaryam alamkārah*, 'a. means beauty' (*Vāmana*). But this 'science' too had a more unpretentious beginning. And in the very first place we have to ask whether the phenomena called *alamkāra* in the earliest texts in this domain need be understood as 'stylistic embellishment, merely aiming at aesthetic effect, mere ornament', — or does the application of the term allow us to render its meaning differently? Some of 'the figures of style' (to use this term), which are afterwards reckoned among the notion of *alamkāra*, were used as such already at an early time. *Yāska* mentions a definition of the *upamā* (simile)¹, and this term is found also in the *sūtras* of *Pāṇini*². The earliest texts in which the term *alamkāra* is brought up, is *Bhāratiya Nāṭyaśāstra*, which, as is well known, treats with the theory of dramatic art. In this work of which the date is only vaguely known (probably the first two centuries after Christ³), four kinds of *alamkāra* are mentioned. (17, 40) *upamā rūpakam caiva dīpakam yamakam tathā | alamkāras tu vyñeyās catvāro .*, "simile, metaphor, 'illuminator', the kind of paronomasia called y. are to be understood as the four a." As has been demonstrated by *KANE*⁴ and *DIWEKAR*⁵, these four terms are among the earliest in the field of poetic terminology. At the same time it is clear that the roots of

¹ *Nirukta* 3, 13-18, cp 1, 3, 5, 1, 1, 19.

² 2, 1, 56, 4, 1, 55, see *DIWEKAR*, *Les fleurs de rhétorique*, pp. 29f

³ See *STEN KONOW*, *Das indische Drama* (Grundriss), p. 2.

⁴ *Indian Antiquary* (see further on), 41, pp. 127f.

⁵ *O.c.*, pp 23ff.

the science of *alamkāra*, which in later times prescribes rules for authors wishing to write *kāvya*, 'art-poetry etc', he in a study of prae-classical literature¹ So, whilst investigating the original meaning of *a* as a classical term in Indian poetics, we should ask the preliminary question what is the character of the stylistic figures which were discerned and summed up under the name of *a*. at a time, when the term was first used? On the other hand we should consider the possibility that the meaning and the character of these 'figures' according to Yāska, the author of the *Bhāratīya* Ns. c s need not agree with our views

Now, elsewhere, in an investigation into the language of *Atharvavedasamhitā* I-VII², I tried to prove that a good number of stylistic peculiarities in Vedic literature, such as alliteration, anaphoric repetition, paronymastic juxtaposition, rhyme and homoioteleuton and other 'figures' must not be considered as ornaments, as stylistic 'embellishments' (at least not primarily), that, on the contrary, they had another function in the sacral or ritual 'Sondersprache' a certain stereotypy in the construction of the sentence (parallelism etc.), the employment of repetitions and 'figures of speech' consisting in repetition of various kinds, etc possess a very real and essential expressive value, they intensify the magic power or religious value of the text, have a hallowing effect, render the text solemn. The fact that among these 'figures' there are some which in later *kāvya*-works and in the books of the theorists occur as certain *yamakas* etc., does not imply that they are virtually identical. With regard to the Vedic sacral language, however, these 'figures' may be said to have been highly instrumental in making it answer its purpose. And even this "rendering suitable for its purpose" was, to my mind, the original meaning of the word *a* in its general use

But although it may be true that those stylistic 'figures' which consist essentially in repetition of the same sounds are in Vedic literature not in the very first place 'aesthetical figures', yet we will have to study the three other 'early' *alamkāras*, before we may conclude that the same is true with regard to all 'early'

¹ See also the remarks by G. BÜHLER, *Sitzungsberichte Wien*, 122 (1890), *passim*

² See above, p 5, n. 2.

alamkāras in general For that reason I commenced an investigation into the use and the essence of the simile, the highly important phenomenon, called *upamā*

In my opinion there is reason enough for contending that the simile in the earliest Indian literature was a phenomenon that might be considered as an 'alamkāra', i.e. as a stylistic 'Ausdruckswert', which added strength to the text, made it such as is required, made it fit, prepared, which contributed to giving it the correct form of style¹ I draw special attention to the use of the simile discussed in §§ 9, 11, 12, 13, 15, 27, 30, 39 ff., esp. 42, etc.

It would be incorrect to say that scholars have not taken an interest in the simile in Indian literature The Indian theorists used to devote much attention to it I have only to remind my readers of the long enumerations of the various kinds of this 'figure' and the fundamental place adjudged to it in the *arthālamkāras*² But also Western scholars have been attracted by the similes and comparisons in Indian literary works, those in Vedic texts included, although here, apart from the Upanisads, above all other texts the Rgveda has been the object studied³ We may even say that the study of Indian similes has been commenced in various ways In the first place I refer to the works which are based on the point of view of the history of civilization In the year 1890 ARNOLD HIRZEL⁴ tried to collect as completely as possible the similes occurring in the Rgveda. he arranged the materials 'nach sachlichen Gruppen', "es lag (ihm) vor allem daran, zu zeigen, welchen Gebieten die Tropen angehören"⁵ Consequently we find all the similes borrowed from the 'Gotterwelt' gathered in the first chapter, those from the 'mythisch-historische Welt' in the second, those bearing upon man in the third, and every chapter is subdivided into paragraphs containing the similes relating to Agni, Aditi etc., to Angiras, Atri etc., to the head, hair, face, etc. etc I do not mean to say that this sort of

¹ See also my paper The meaning of the word *alamkāra*, p. 111.

² See e.g. Commentary on Vāmana, Kāvya 4, 2, 1

³ I refer to the remarks in my *Stilistische Studie*, p. 9.

⁴ A HIRZEL, *Gleichnisse und Metaphern im Rgveda in culturhistorischer Hinsicht zusammengestellt* ., Diss Leipzig 1890.

⁵ HIRZEL, p. 2

research is useless on the contrary, I regret that it should have remained unfinished

In her essays on Buddhist similes and parables Mrs. RHYS DAVIDS practically takes the same point of view, but only a broader one. She gathered 'not only the tale or fable and the parable, but also the swifter single figure, even when compressed into one adjectival term'¹, the end she had in view was that it would be easy, "from this collection, to group out the variety of ways in which the Indo-Aryan mind has presented its images", in the second place, however, because it is interesting "to consider those objects and events, in the environing scenes of nature and of human contrivance, which both occur in these similes and occur with frequency", lastly because "a study of Buddhist similes may serve to aid in following with sympathy and intelligence the views taken by Buddhist thought, and Indian thought generally, of the problems of life and conduct"². In another beautiful, but rather inaccessible paper³ she remarks among other things that a knowledge of the similes will make us more qualified "to understand something of the corresponding perennial charm which has won for the teachings of Gotama the Buddha their age-long hold over all the countries of their adoption"⁴, moreover that "the various forms in which the illustrative imagery of the Pīṭakas is expressed are not without interest for comparative literature"⁵, then also "these comparisons from the esthetic standpoint would certainly prove not the least fascinating part of this book that awaits its author"⁶.

Another way has been followed by those authors who in the first place pay attention to the outward appearance of similes and suchlike figures and cling to the traditional schemes of the 'art of composition', the *ars bene dicendi et scribendi*. In this connection the works of some French scholars should be men-

¹ C. A. F. RHYS DAVIDS, *Similes in the Nikayas. A classified Index* Journal of the Pāli Text Society, 1906-1907, pp. 52sqg ; Some additions etc., *ibid.* 1908, pp. 180sqg.

² O.c., p. 56.

³ Published in *The Open Court*, a monthly magazine devoted to the Science of Religion etc., 22, 9 (628; Sept. 1908), pp. 522 ff.

⁴ O.c., p. 524.

⁵ O.c., p. 525.

⁶ O.c., p. 533.

tioned "La rhétorique védique est en effet une rhétorique bizarre"—, "la hardiesse des comparaisons védiques est bien connue", are opinions expressed by BERGAIGNE¹ in a paper which treats, among other things, with "comparaisons doubles", „combinaisons incohérentes du terme propre et du terme figuré", „rapprochements de comparaisons disparates", but he keeps his eye also on other things² GUÉRINOT examines the outward form and the objects of comparison in a dissertation about Vedic rhetoric³ the headings of the chapters are: de explicitis comparationibus (viz similes with particles), de implicitis c. etc. But in contrast to the traditional Western 'art of composition' and its view aiming at practical ends, its often sterile schemes etc., modern scientific stylistics which intend to demonstrate the historical development and to explain the stylistic phenomena in the frame-work of the linguistic phenomena in general should take an independent point of view.

Here I refer also to OLDENBERG's remarks: in his work 'Rgveda, Textkritische und exegetische Noten'⁴ he emphasizes especially the outward appearance and the grammatical construction of the similes.

Other scholars stated that in the earlier Indian literature stylistic phenomena are to be found which are well-known in *kāvya* and taught in the *alamkāraśāstra*. "Figures of speech are of rare occurrence in the most ancient writings", KANE says⁵, but "without simile and metaphor no language can far advance", and, accordingly, he enumerates a number of "simple figures of speech" that are met with "even in the Vedic literature", where

¹ A. BERGAIGNE, Quelques observations sur les figures de rhétorique dans le Rig-Veda, MSL. 4, pp. 96ff.

² p. 137 " .que ce qui explique les plus bizarres de ces emplois, c'est précisément l'allusion qu'ils renferment à des idées mythiques et, avant tout, à la correspondance des rites du culte et des phénomènes célestes; le rite ... la formule ... sont comme des talismans qui assurent le succès de celui qui les emploie" — I refer also to his paper La syntaxe des comparaisons védiques, Bibl. de l'École des hautes études, vol. 63 (Mélanges Rénier), Paris 1887, pp. 75 ff. Here (p. 76, n. 1) "comparaisons poétiques" and "comparaisons historiques" are distinguished.

³ A. GUÉRINOT, De rhetorica vedica, Diss. Lyon 1900.

⁴ Berlin, 1909-12. See the Indices

⁵ P. V. KANE, Outlines of the history of *Alamkāra* literature, in Indian Antiquary 41 (1912), pp. 124ff. and 204ff.

he calls their employment "rare and rather unconscious." DIWEKAR¹, who treats the same subject as KANE, expresses an opinion on this subject, with which I do not agree "Nous avons vu que la répétition reste à la base de tous les alankāra ou ornements de mots. Mais, avec le progrès du savoir, les mots ne suffirent plus à exprimer les idées nouvelles. La distinction même entre la lettre et l'esprit indique une nouvelle étape de la rhétorique. Une fois que cette distinction fut sentie, les mots passèrent naturellement à l'arrière-plan, cédant la première place aux idées. Ainsi, à côté de la répétition des mots, il y eut répétition des idées. Un mot exprimant presque toujours une notion applicable à divers objets, c'est-à-dire recouvrant sous la même forme des nuances de sens plus ou moins subtiles, déterminées par le contexte, on a pu se servir de cette particularité pour suggérer, à l'aide du même mot, plusieurs significations similaires. C'est ainsi qu'on est arrivé au procédé que les rhétoriciens désignent sous le nom de comparaison (upamā)"

Other scholars, OLDENBERG and WELLER, considered the simile in the most ancient Indian literature from the point of view of the history of religions. OLDENBERG perceived very well that "die in den Zauberformeln so häufigen Vergleichen . offenbar kein zufälliger poetischer Schmuck (sind), sondern.. ein magisches Moment (enthalten)"² Here the question arises, whether the occurrence of similes in this way is their original use in Indian literature in general (OLDENBERG speaks, indeed, about the most ancient Vedic texts), and also, how this use of similes is to be explained. As far as I know, OLDENBERG did not give an answer to these questions. Although WELLER³ made a number of good remarks, in a paper of which the subject-matter does not agree exactly with its title, he appears to me to emphasize this point too exclusively. The style of the "nur andeutenden... Ausdrucksweise", he says, " ..entspringt einer besonderen Anlage der indischen Psyche für geheimnisvolles und zeigt sich in dem magischen Denken des Opferritualismus so deutlich wie in der

¹ H. R. DIWEKAR, *Les fleurs de rhétorique dans l'Inde*, Diss. Paris, 1930, p. 15

² H. OLDENBERG, *Die Religion des Veda*, 3-4, p. 515.

³ H. WELLER, *Über Vergleichen im Rigveda*, Festgabe-Von GARBE, (1927), pp. 54ff ; see also WELLER, *Zu einigen Metaphern des Rigveda*, ZII. 5, pp. 178ff

Vorliebe für mystische und ratselhafte Rede. Der religiöse Glaube unterstützte die dichterische Vorstellung wesentlich, in der Fähigkeit eines Wortes zweierlei zu bedeuten sahen diese alten Menschen eine magische Kraft''¹

In my opinion, each of these views may lead to a certain outcome, we must rate the good elements in them at their true value. The classification of the various forms of their outward appearance, provided it takes place on correct principles, the cataloguing of the similes which occur in certain parts of the Indian literature in accordance with the object of comparison and with their frequency, the determination of the part played by the simile in magical or religious texts is of interest from the standpoints of the history of literature, culture and religions. We learn from these much that may help us to a better understanding of the texts and of the Indian mind. But each of these views considers only one side of the phenomenon. Moreover it seems to me to be an awkward procedure to confine our investigations to a very small part of the literature², we are not able to rate the 'figure' at its true value, if we confine ourselves to too small a domain. We must, I take it, making our choice from various kinds of literature, proceed in a comparing manner. We must not confine our materials to *kāvya* and *Rgveda*, which contain, *omnium consensu*, a great deal of unusual speech, and which are in many respects 'court-art'. Moreover, we have to ask ourselves, whether the use of a simile is, apart from the cases mentioned by OLDENBERG and WELLER, always an 'ornament', as is suggested by those who teach that *alamkāras* are 'ornaments', that *alamkāra* includes "everything that makes poetry attractive, that adds charm to it and embellishes it". Last but not least: we must not omit to take the simile for what it is in the first place, viz. a linguistic phenomenon.

In this booklet I will try to study the simile in a number of Sanskrit texts in a way independent both of the Indian books on *alamkāra* and of traditional Western 'rhetoric theories' that live on in many a book. I will try to consider the matter as a stylistic problem; the term 'stylistic' to be understood as I ex-

¹ O.c., p. 61.

² Cp. e.g. Bhār. Nāṭyaś. 17, 41 *yat kiṃ cit kāvya-bandheṣu sādrśyeno-pamīyate | upamā nāma viññeyā gunākṛtsamāśrayā.*

plained elsewhere¹ Not only classic texts, in casu Rgveda and kāvya-works, but any linguistic utterance, originating from anyone, from anywhere may be an object of stylistic research In such a research certain means of expression of a language are studied in their relation to the manner in which their logical-intellectual meaning is expressed in the simplest way according to the standard felt in that language In a stylistic research the conditions and motives are studied which are at the root of the use of certain forms of speech in certain circumstances, at the root of the choice made from the means of expression offered by the language For these stylistics stylistic 'figures' are *Ausdruckswerte*² The interpretation of the texts, the understanding of the Indian mind will benefit by such a research, which will, of course, bring to light also the above-mentioned 'magico-religious meaning' which may be inherent to a simile Here linguistics, in casu stylistics, are once more essential to philology.

When we undertake such a research in the domain of Indian literature, we should realize, that the language, in which it is written too, however 'artificial', however 'special', however 'technical' it may often be, in its last resort has its roots in everyday colloquial language, spoken by the general public, that at least it can not be considered as possible without this background The question how we have to conceive the relation between a certain kind of literature and the colloquial language which was its 'starting-point' — a question which in this form has been put only in a simplistic way —, it is not always possible to answer.

There are two facts which make such an investigation in the province of early Indian literature not totally impossible. Firstly: stylistic data, as a rule, occur collectively: the 'style' of the whole passage generally contributes towards the elucidation of the value of one of the stylistic elements Not only broadly outlined: there is a difference between the style of the remarks of the vidūṣaka in a stage-play and a magical formula of the Atharvaveda, but also in a more limited sense: as contrasted with the greater 'precision' of the well-educated man: *the old gentleman is*

¹ See my *Stilistische Studie*, § 6, pp. 12ff.

² For this term see W. SCHNEIDER, *Ausdruckswerte der deutschen Sprache* (1931), pp. 3ff., 7 ff

still a sturdy walker shows the more familiarly-emotional *the old gent is still slick on his pins* more than one difference. And secondly: there exists — as may now be considered probable — a correlation between certain influencing factors and certain stylistic phenomena¹

Although stylistics are a young offshoot of linguistic science, and although the simile — as far as I know — seems to have been neglected to a certain extent in the works and papers treating with such matter from the said point of view, it is an attractive task to try to acquire a more complete understanding of the simile in such an old and foreign literature. Of course, a first attempt must chiefly consist in reconnoitring the domain, if possible urging on to further investigation; it will not exhaust the subject-matter, its results will be only provisional. Much will already have been attained, when it evokes well-founded criticism.

My explanations will be incomplete. I only treat those similes that are expressed by means of one of the particles *va*, *na*, *yathā*, moreover the sentences with *yathā* — *evā* (*evam*) and *yathā* — *tathā*. As is well known images expressed in this way are often found also in another dress, e.g. in compounds. They might been treated in another booklet, the results should be gathered up and compared. The relation simile. metaphor will be discussed only incidentally. As the metaphor cannot always be recognized unequivocally — many a time an expression seems to us to be a metaphorical one, whereas the ancient Indians did not consider it as such —, I thought it better to confine myself to expressions that are clearly indicated by means of the said particles.

It stands to reason that the division into paragraphs and the classification are made chiefly for the sake of convenient arrangement. The lines drawn between the various classes are vague in the extreme; many an instance may be classed in more than one paragraph at the same time, in a number of cases I make use of references. The 'classes' are essentially no strict distinctions, but various aspects of 'the simile'. As the object I have in view is to write on the simile as a linguistic phenomenon, the individual use of this figure and its use as a literary device in

¹ At greater length. Stilistische Studie, p. 14.

works of art take only a secondary place and are very incomplete into the bargain.

In a certain light my remarks may be considered as prolegomena to the study of the 'literary' simile. The teachings of the Indian theorists have been deliberately not been dealt with

§ 1. As has already been stated in the Introduction, the view of DIWEKAR that the simile is a phenomenon peculiar to a high civilization, that it is a manifestation of knowledge and wisdom, a mark of art, nay of artificiality, that similes did not arise until "le progrès du savoir", seems to be erroneous. That this view, which is found also elsewhere, although it is usually not expressed as clearly as in DIWEKAR's book, cannot be true and that similes are not late phenomena in the history of human language, we learn from the fact that we are accustomed to look upon abstract ideas as similar to things we perceive with our sense-organs, and that it is in the first place people who have no trained way of thinking that are accustomed to do so. Naïve and 'primitive' men who are scarcely able to abstract, are inclined to name new things after the familiar and to compare things unknown to the well-known. By means of a 'simile' they bring the unknown within the sphere of the known. A primitive measure of time is e.g. malay *sēpērtanak nasi lamanja*, "as long as it takes rice to boil"; a measure of length is the spear or a hand's breadth, or the like; cp. Homer, Od. 6, 294 f. *ἐνθα δὲ πατρὸς ἐμοῦ τέμενος . τόσσον ἀπὸ πτόλιος ὅσσον τε γέγωνε βοήσας*, II. 3, 12, 21, 251, etc.; also in Sanskrit, *krośa-* "shout, yell" is a measure of distance; Ch. Up. 3, 14, 3 *eṣa ma ātmāntar hrdaye anīyān vīher vā yavād vā*. „Avec le progrès du savoir" however, these inaccurate and unsystematical measures are superseded by a more exact terminology, based on a fixed standard¹. „Die anderen Masse sind bei niedrigen und mittleren Naturvölkern ebenfalls als gewisse traditionelle Mengen oder Packungen, etwa von Tabakbündeln oder von Sagorollen u. dgl. ausgebildet, ohne dass es aber zu irgendeinem allgemein anerkannten Hohlmasz oder Gewicht gekommen wäre. Es fehlt das Zurückführen sol-

¹ See e.g. SCHRADER-NEHRING, Reallexikon der Indogermanischen Altertumskunde, II, 1929, p. 43.

cher Handelsmengen auf einen Normalfall''¹ The more concretely people think, the more they make use of 'gegenständliche Abstraktion'; the more they have occasion for 'similes' etc. in trivial communications

When Bataks, Dajaks, Toradjas are asked to compare colours or to say their names, they use a circumlocution with a simile when their language does not possess a word.² In Marindinese blue 'is to be translated' by. "like the sky", red: 'like blood'³ But, in many a case we also express ourselves in the same way: "gris souris (est) une comparaison"⁴, just as fr. *étouffe saumon*, — *cerise* etc. Our West-European languages do not possess names of odours, here we must express our perceptions by means of a periphrasis *it smells of onions, his coat smells of tobacco*, also *the smell reminds me of onions*, etc.; I leave out of account words like *biting, penetrating, sweet, bad* etc. Many a flavour we can only denote by means of a simile: *as sour as a lemon*, — *as vinegar*.

Both 'primitive' and 'cultivated' people often compare things unknown to the hearer with objects with which he is familiar. "the radja possesses a big house, as big as your house" (Flores), "the church of that town is as big as York minster" Also in Sanskrit: Manu 6, 53 *his vessels shall be cleansed with water like the camasa-cups at a sacrifice*. Primitive men and the common people think concretely and entirely on analogical lines. "Es besteht bei dem naiven Menschen die Neigung, in Schilderungen nicht die einzelnen Merkmale des zu schildernden Gegenstandes aufzuzahlen, sondern ihn in Analogie mit anderen Gegenständen zu bringen, mit denen er die Merkmale gemeinsam hat.. (a French boy, 14 years old.) *entrez messieurs et regardez ce monstre, il a une tête comme une citrouille, des cheveux comme des carottes et des doigts comme une araignée...* (nicht:) "runder Kopf, strähnige Haare, dunne Finger"⁵. "The speech of modern savages is often

¹ R. THURNWALD, *Psychologie des primitiven Menschen*, p. 277f.

² T.g.S.G. MOELIA, *Het primitieve denken in de moderne wetenschap*, Diss. Leiden, 1933, p. 69.

³ H. GEURTJENS, *Associatiebegrippen bij de Marindineezen*. *Mensch en Maatschappij*, 1928, p. 239. Cp. also F. BOAS, *The mind of primitive man*, p. 198.

⁴ CH. BALLY, *Le langage et la vie*, p. 137.

⁵ W. STERN, *Die Analogie im volkstümlichen Denken*, 1893, p. 21 f; see also C. G. N. DE VOOYS, *Vergelykingen in de Taal*, in *De Nieuwe Taalgids*, 1909, = *Verzamelde Taalkundige Opstellen*, II (1925), pp. 184 vlgg.

spoken of as abounding in similes and all kinds of figurative phrases..."¹ Comparing, i.e. connecting notions which have in common important characteristics, is a chief function of the human mind, for 'primitive (naïve)' men it is often the only method of thinking and communication². We must add that in a number of cases a comparison, from the logical-intellectual point of view, is the only adequate expression.

In my opinion DIWEKAR c.s. who say that similes are a manifestation of a higher civilization, confuse the usually individual literary simile and the simile which arises or is called into being as a thing of art, as an elaborated and artificial element of style with the simile in general. In this connection it must be observed that e.g. in the dialogues of 'Bhāsa's plays' the similes are uttered chiefly by the vidūṣaka and by persons of lower rank and station in life, such as servants, maids etc. In plays without a vidūṣaka (Pratimā°, Abhiṣeka°) the number of similes is strikingly smaller. Moreover, in India too, authors who did not write kāvya or those that wrote without the intention to create 'things of beauty' employed similes as well.

In this paragraph I especially point to those similes which seem to be the only possible way of expression in a particular case. In early Indian literature this kind of simile is well-known.³ Quite rational and to the point is e.g. Ait. Br. 6, 17, 2 *yathā vā ekāhaḥ suta evam ahīnah*, "as is the ceremony of one day so is the sacrifice that lasts several days". A person to whose house a Vrātya comes should say... V., *be it so as is dear to thee*, A.V. 15, 11, 2, cp also 6, 8, 10, Ait. Br. 6, 18, 11, 32, 15; 33, 14; 15, measures Āp. ś. s. 7, 2, 13 *yāvān yajamānaḥ*, 5, 1, 19, 11, 3, Mārk. Pur. 10, 81; 12, 10. Quite natural is e.g. ChU. 5, 1, 6 ff. where it is told, how the prānāḥ quarrelled about their respective superiority. speech departs from the body, and returning after a year's absence, it asks the other prānāḥ how they survived without it; they say. like the dumb, without speaking, but breathing, seeing etc. In the same way the other prānāḥ depart and return, and similar answers are given "The gods

¹ O. JESPERSEN, Language, p. 432.

² I refer also to F. MAUTNER, Beiträge zu einer Kritik der Sprache² (1906), p. 467.

³ VĀMANA, Kāvya. 4, 2, 7 c 'describing *tattva*'.

could not pass by *yāvān eva rathayānāya tāvān ākāśah* Jaim. Br. 2, 128.

. In any language people might say *so 'py evam nārhatē vaktum yathā tvam* Mbh. 12, 261, 8, cf 334, 22, Nala 25, 15, Mbh 7, 4, 10, 12, 279, 20 *yathā karma tathā lābhah*. Manu 6, 53¹, 8, 318 Here poetical ornament is altogether out of the question See also Aśv S. 11, 53, Kāl Māl. 4, 7 + pr *on that occasion I was not gratified . so much as I have been to-day* ., Bhār Kīr 6, 40

§ 2 Very often a simile is used 'for economical reasons'. *He behaves like a madman* is quite intelligible, but if we wish to explain the meaning of the simple simile *like a madman* we need a long explanation which, moreover, is not distinctly present to the mind of most of us Likewise. *like a snowball*. For convenience we compare persons and things with other persons and objects on grounds of external appearance and characteristic qualities. Both Indians and we say *the . gods wander on the earth like mortals* Mārķ P. 82, 6 *devaganā bhuvā | vicaranti yathā martyā*, or "this woman talks like a man" *vakty eṣā stri pumān iva*² And would "his nephew was like a son" (Jāt I, 456 *mayham bhāgineyyo sabbathāpi nātako yeva*) not be a very natural expression in many languages? Or *unmatta iva*³ etc ? See e.g. RV 1, 39, 5 *pro ārata maruto durmadā iva*, "as if drunk", Bhāsa, Avim. 6, 14 + *kanyāpuram svagr̥havat pravṛṣya*. Manu, 7, 187 f. the various ways of drawing up the troops are described, although the sentence does not show the outward appearance of a simile, *dandavyūhena tam ... yāyāt śakateṇa vā* mean "let him march . . arraying his troops like a staff, or like a waggon . ." I refer also to expressions such as *shaped like the half-moon*, e.g. Mārķ. Pur 21, 49. — Mrcch 4, 20 + *abhujissae via manṛdam*, Bhār Kīr 7, 33 Cp. also Āp ś s. 2, 11, 3; 17, 13, 6 *kūrmāprasant*-etc.

Modelled on this sort of sayings are e.g. Kāl. Śak 7, 14 + *kiṃ nu khalu bāle 'sminn aurasa iva putre snihyati me manah*⁴, 5, 20,

¹ See above

² DANDIN, Kāvyaṇṛ 2, 51f

³ See e.g. Nala 10, 22, 13, 47, cp also § 12, cp Bhār Kīr 16, 46 *hīmācalah kṣība vācakampe*

⁴ See also §§ 14, 18.

5, 22 + *akantava vāsyāḥ kopo laksyate*, cp Rām 4, 22, 9 Kāl Urv. 4, 33, however, the simile expresses other things as well here Purūravas, bewildered and trying to find Urvaśī, says to an antelope, *she (U) too glances gracefully as does your doe (yathariva-tathariva)*. Cp Rām 4, 23 4

By the side of this type which is used unconsciously in everyday speech, people that speak or write consciously may express much in few words thus Kāl Ragh 15, 21 calls a hard and huge rock the fist of Yama it has destroying power. This is a suggesting simile

§ 3 Quite usual is a simile when things are described in a vague and inexact way, either because a short indication may be sufficient or on account of the speaker's inability to say more accurately what he has in view Bhāsa, Pratimā, 5, 12 + *aye vidyutsampāta va drśyate*, "here comes something like a flash of lightning", Avim 5, 5 +, Cār Prol, Kāl Māl 4, 15 + *iha kutīlagatṛḥ sarpa va drśyate*, Urv 2, 11 + after the falling of a birch-leaf, the Vidūsaka cries *bho kim nu khu edam bhuanganimmoam va sammuhe no navadīdam*, "what is it that like the slough of a snake has fallen before us?". 19 + (pr.) Harṣa, Nāg 2, 4 + — Not unfrequently a simile is a makeshift when we can not find the right word¹.

Elsewhere we find this kind of simile as part of a description that enters into details Bhāsa, Avim 4, 0 (maid in attendance on the princess) "the princess, tormented by shame and fear and love, perplexed by distress, is like someone who has swooned" *avaadacedanā va samvuttā*

§ 4 This simile is also found when a person does not want to speak right to the point for motives of tact or mockery or to throw a certain light upon a thing Kāl. Māl 2, 11 + Vid to the king who mourns for Mālavikā's departure *you are like a poor patient who desires the medicine to be brought by the physician himself*. The natives of Flores are accustomed to say² about a person who is handsome and well-shaped, but has a bad character. *bog ranga dika mana darat*, "yes his face is like a d." (a d is usually a good spirit) If an Ibo-wife wishes to part with her

¹ See e g J. VAN GINNEKEN, in Leuvense Bijdragen, 10 (1912-3), pp 62ff.

² According to Pater A. BURGER

husband, she says *A thing like you has to come to me*¹

§ 5. Well-known in colloquial speech are utterances like the following. At Br. 7, 16, 3 Śunaḥśepa who is on the verge of being slaughtered thinks. *amānusam iva vai mā viśasīsyanti*, "they will slaughter me like a not human being", RV. 1, 94, 7 *yo ... dūre cit san talid vāti rocasi*, 104, 5; 82, 1 *mātathā va*, "sei nicht wie einer, der anders will" (Geldner). Aśv. Saund. 3, 22 ff. begins in a quite natural way. *he walked in the air as if on the earth* etc. (*divi bhuvīva*), but in 24 imagination gets the upper-hand This simile is found also in colloquial use, when some one gives utterance to a supposition or to a cautious or provisional conclusion. Bhāsa, Pratimā 5, 3 + Sītā to Rāma (pr.) *your face is pale as if your heart were troubled by some sorrow*.

§ 6. Quite common is *iva + bhāti* or a compound of *bhāti* "to resemble, to look or be like", *drśyate* and the like.² Ch. Up. 4, 9, 2 *brahmavid iva var .. bhāsi*, "you shine like a Brahman-knower" Nala 12, 103 *ayam agamah ... | āpīdair bahubhir bhāti śrīmān parvatarād iva*; Mbh 7, 15, 18; 25, 41, 26, 61. An unaffected and quite natural case is also Bhāsa, Abhiṣ. 4, 16 +, where Vibhīšana remarks: *dvidhābhūta iva drśyate jalaṇdriḥ*, "the sea seems now to be cut in twain"; the Ocean, indeed, has given passage to Rāma and his followers; 2, 2 d *mahendrapurīva bhāti Lankā*. With a tautological *iva*³ Rām 4, 58, 17 the garment of Sītā *bhāti yathā vidyud vāmbare*, see also 15, 4, 28, 6 — Cp. also Bhāsa, Abhiṣ. 1, 13 II; 24, 4, 23; 6, 12; Avim. 4, 0 (pr) Kāl Urv 7, 6 + the nymph C to Urvaśī. *aṇachcharā via me paḍihāsi*, "you seem to me to behave like one who is not an apsaras", Urv. 5, 4 (*ābh.*), Śak. 7, 16 (*vibh.*), Māl. 3, 8 (*ābh.* with alliteration). — Poetical fiction seems to be present Rām. 4, 61, 9, in a description of the earth seen from a great height, *himavāms carva vindhyaś ca ... | bhūtale saṃprakāśante nāgā va jalāśaye*. In poetical works we find elaborated cases, cp. e.g. Aśv. Saund 6, 3 *vlambahārā calayoktrakā sā tasmād vimānād vmatā cakāśe | tapahkṣayād apsarasām vareva cyutaṃ vimānāt priyam ikṣamāṇā*. A nice verse Kāl. Urv. 3, 3 *parījanavanitā-*

¹ N. W. THOMAS, Anthr. Report of the Ibo-speaking peoples ... (1913), p. 61.

² See e.g. the example given by VĀMANA, Kāvya. 4, 2, 3.

³ See § 58.

*karārpitābhīh | parivṛta eṣa vibhāti dīpikābhīh | girir iva gatimān
apakṣalopād | anutaṭapūṣṭitakarnikārayaṣṭh. Cp. Bhār Kir. 18, 4.*

§ 7 In colloquial speech we often hear short and striking similes, most of them are borrowed from every-day life and events, from the "nächste Umwelt" of speaker and hearer.¹ They bring about a connection with familiar facts. The other day I heard a man in the street say. *hij liep te hijgen als een oud fordje* ("he walked along, panting like an old ramshackle flivver") AV. 9, 3 is a hymn that has to accompany the releasing of a house, 24 we read: *like a bride*², o dwelling, we carry thee where we will, we know that the bride must enter the house of her husband without touching the threshold and then sit down on a skin, she might however be lifted over it by a strong man³; 10, 8, 14 Prajāpati bearing water aloft is compared with a female water-bearer having a vessel. It is an interesting fact that sometimes the Paipp rec. of AV. has another reading. 11, 8, 32 *all deities are seated in him as cows in a cow-stall*, here Ppp has a 'less naïve'⁴ pāda *śarīre 'dhi samāhitāh*, similar RV 10, 97, 8, where, however, the comparison seems to be less self-evident, see also Ved. Conc. 348. Cp. also AV. 10, 1, 1, 7, 43; 14, 2, 44, 19, 35, 2; 38, 2. Jaim. Br. n° 32 C. "the gods pressed down the asuras by means of brhat as with a net". *brhatā jālenevābhīnyaubjan*, viz. after having packed them up (*saṁvicya*) with rathantara, here although the image has been taken from every-day life, its greater extent and the fact that it is repeated makes it nearly equivalent to a didactic simile.⁵ Ch. Up. 3, 13, 8 *when the ears are closed, it is heard like the roar of a flaming fire*, 3, 15, 1 *the universe is a box: the earth is its bottom* etc.⁶ (without a particle of comparison). Rām. 27, 15 a peak of a mountain is called *śvetam ivāmbaram | kailāsaśkharaprakhyam*. Quite to the point is Bhāsa, Prat. 3, 14 (śl.) *ayam hi patitaḥ ko 'pi vayahstha iva pārthivah*, in fact it was Bharata, the king's

¹ See also CH. BALLY, *Traité de stylistique française*, I^a, § 273; H. PONGS, *Das Bild in der Dichtung I*, Marburg 1927, p. 168.

² See WHITNEY-LANMAN, *Atharva-Veda Samhitā Translated*, p. 528.

³ See e.g. KEITH, *Religion and Philosophy of the Veda and Upanishads*, p. 375.

⁴ WHITNEY-LANMAN, *o.c.*, p. 651.

⁵ See also § 49.

⁶ Cp. § 50.

son See also, for instance, Kāl R. 15, 15· he arrived from the forest with a great number of wild animals, as if they were a tribute (from it)

The origin of these comparisons lay in the mere sense perception. But they may have developed, and in India this happened indeed, into similes with an additional aesthetic value. In classic art poetry "wird z. B. das Antlitz der Geliebten in Parallele gestellt zu Mondscheibe und Lotosblume (auf Grund des weissen Schimmers), aber über die objektive Konstatierung hinausführend mit der gefühlsmässigen Absicht, durch den Vergleich den ästhetischen Wert zu betonen"¹

§ 8. In primitive tales, popular songs and the like, a thing is often called after a property that strikes the eyes or after the impression made by its outward appearance germ. *die grüne Wiese, mein junges Leben*², neth. *de blauwe lucht*, eng. *the merry month of May*, gr. μέσση ἐνὶ οἴνοπι πόντι (Od. 5, 132). As the character of a primitive tale leans towards the idealistic, it likes to represent persons and things as perfect ones in their kind: a king, a prince or a knave are brave and stout-hearted, a princess is handsome, nay of a dazzling beauty, because she is a princess, a king has unlimited power, because he is a king. These epitheta are added many a time, when they are of no importance: φιλομειδής 'Αφροδίτη, *Damayantī śucismitā*. In the same way in the popular novel of modern times a distinguished person is usually a count, a rich man, a multi-millionaire. A frequent use of fixed epitheta may involve the employment of similes which are just as well a means to underline the concrete and 'das sinnlich Eindrucksvolle': *as brave as a prince, as blue as the sky, as deep as the sea*; by the side of germ. *schneeweiss, weiss wie Schnee*, by the side of *hon-hearted as bold as a lion*, etc. "In den mehr hofischen Epen, wie Nibelungen, Gudrun ... sind die Helden höchstens *gröz oder wît zen brusten* ... im späteren deutschen Volksepos zeigt sich ein ganz anderes Bild: ... (ist der) Held *grozs* ... seine Arme (sind) *dick wie ein Stamm* und *hart wie ein Stein*, Schenkel und Füsse *wie die eines Riesen* ... *als ein want*

¹ B. HEIMANN, Studien zur Eigenart indischen Denkens, pp. 186f.

² Cp. ROB. PERSCH, Volksdichtung und volkstümliches Denken, Hessische Blätter für Volkskunde, II (1903), p. 208, R. VAN DER MEULEN, Die Naturvergleiche in den Liedern und Totenklagen der Lüttauer, Diss. Leiden, 1907, pp. 6f.

ist ein Schild oder *armdick* . . *schnell wie der Wind* sind die Pferde¹ Very often in Sanskrit *siṃhavat parākramed*, Ind Spr² 4378, *hīmapāndura-* Rām., *hīmagaura-* Bhār `Kir 5, 17. etc

Built on 'as deep as the sea'³, e.g. RV 3, 45, 3, is RV 7, 33, 8 *samudrasyeva mahimā gabhīrah*, cp. in a Flemish short story in the 'Handelsblad' 'n Franschen Graaf die zoo ryk was als de zee diepe is⁴

§ 9 If we compare in our mother-tongue expressions like the netherlandish *hy sleep vast* with *hy sleep als een marmot*, *hy ging erg te keer* with *hy ging te keer als een bezetene* and the like we are quite aware of the fact that the second expression is more vigorous and expressive, but at the same time more familiar and popular (sometimes even 'vulgar') than the first. The same rule holds good in other languages cp. e.g. engl. *he hears with great difficulty*, with *he is as deaf as a post*, *he is very poor* with *he is as poor as a church-mouse*, cp. fr. *dormir comme une souche* *sourd comme un pot*, etc. Originally these expressions were similes, just like many other similes, which had their root in the concrete way of thinking and speaking of the colloquial language. On the one hand the mass of these similes is constantly renewed, on the other hand, however, many of them lose their original character and become more 'moyens expressifs', 'Ausdrucksverstärkung'⁴. In modern languages it is not always an easy task to draw the line, in ancient literature it is very often impossible to know, whether in one case or another the original simile still appeals to the feeling of the author.

AV 8, 4, against sorcerers and demons, an instance seems to occur of an expressive, 'ausdrucksverstärkendes' simile⁵. *sam aghaśamsam abhy agham tapur yayastu carur agnīmān iva*, "against the evil-plotter .. let heat boil all up like a fiery pot", see RV. 7, 104, 2. RV 1, 51, 14 *pajreṣu stomo duryo na*

¹ L. WOLF, Der groteske und hyperbolische Stil des Mittelhoch-deutschen Volksepos, Palaestra 25 (1903), pp. 20-30

² See further on, § 12.

³ Cp. Hooft, Warenar, 1030.

⁴ See also DE VOOYS, o.c., p. 194f. VĀMANA, Kāvya 4, 2, 7, etc. I refer also to the notion of 'pusti-', e.g. id. 4, 2, 19.

⁵ For the construction and the meaning see WHITNEY-LANMAN, o.c., p. 486.

yūpah, that means "das Loblied halt so fest wie der Turpfosten"¹
See also RV. 1, 185, 1; 2, 5, 3.

Yet sometimes we have a good chance to be right in supposing a conscious use of the simile. In a menace² Mbh. 7, 19, 3 *adyartān pātayisyāmi kruddho rudrah paśūn iva*; Mrch. 5, 11 + (pr) *with this stick I will make you fall as a ripe mango-fruit*, Kāl. Śak. 6, 27 *esa tvām ... / śārdūlah paśum iva hanmi ceṣtamānam*, "I kill thee .. as a tiger does a head of cattle". In a slanging-match Mbh. 1, 137, 7 *angarājyaṃ cā nārhas tvam upabhoktum narādhama | śvā ... puroḍāśam ivādhvare*; Kāl. Māl. 1, 12 +, where two dancing-masters quarrel. "this man is not even equal to the dust on my feet" (*nāyaṃ me pādarajasāpi tulyah*) "between you and myself is the same difference that there is between the ocean and a pool" (*...samudrapalvalayor ivāntaram*) See Bhāsa, Prat. 3, 16 under § 14³. In an execration, magical threat AV. 8, 6, 19. In anxiety Kāl. Śak. 6, 26 + *here some one is breaking me into three pieces like a sugar-cane*⁴. In an assertion: Mārķ. Pur. 15, 57 *I will remain firm as a mountain*; cp. 21, 31. In praising, e.a.. Mrch. 1, 2, *gauribhujalatā ... vīdyullekheva*.

Now and then this type has been elaborated: Bhāsa, Cār. 1, 26 + (pr.) e.g. has it twice with *iva* and the simile on the first place. With alliteration Kāl. Śak. 4, 1 *smariṣyati tvām na sa ... / kathām pramattah prathamam kṛtām iva*.

Attention may be drawn to such cases as the following Bhāsa, Pratimā 7, 9 d 'they wish to see your face) anointed ... like a lotus with drops of dew', *sahlasikṭam ivāravindam*, logically this means: your handsome face which becomes handsomer yet by the water; 7, 12 d *Rāma . . is adored by myriads of people like the crescent moon*, a hyperbolic expression, meaning: ... respectfully by a great number of men; cp. 13 d; 14 II. The well-known epic hyperbolic similes have their root in an intense admiration, veneration, respect and suchlike feelings with regard to the

¹ GELDNER, Der Rigveda übersetzt und erläutert, I (1923), p. 58.

² I refer also to H. WERNER, Die Ursprünge der Metapher (1919) p. 99ff., scorn: pp. 130f., 166

³ See p. 31.

⁴ But this instance is at the same time comical!

gods, heroes and persons whose deeds are described¹

§ 10. Hyperbolic² similes are very frequent, in the shape of compounds, e g Aśv S 1, 42 *saṁdvistīrnaparikham*, as well as with °kalpa- etc. id c *śailakalpamahāvapram*, and with *iva* etc. id. d *gīrivrajam vāparam*. See e g id. 3, 41 *people rejoiced there as in the golden age of Manu*, compare our *as in paradise*, 4, 30, 14, 50; see also 2, 22. Often in epic language, e g Mbh. 7, 7, 31 *paresām agratas tasthau kālacakram vadyatam*, 7, 46; 52, 15, 28 *sannipatya gaṇāv iva*, 19, 3, 11, 5, 9 *nāgaiḥ śailair iva samunnataih*, Mār. P. 82, 11. See also Bhāsa, Cār. 3, 4 + (pr.). Abhis 3, 4 +, 6, 3 d, Kāl. Śak 6, 9, Kum. 4, 25; 7, 13 Learned and more artificial is e g Aśv. S. 1, 22. Denoting a very high degree RV. 8, 14, 1 *yad indrāhaṁ yathā tvam*.

§ 11. A simile of this kind as an intensifying addition or as an exaggeration: Rām. 4, 67, 24 Hanumān says: *I will fall down like lightning from the cloud*, where the commentary adds *vidyudupamayā saighryeṇa bahudeśavyāptir dhvanyate*. Bhāsa, Pratimā 1, 17 (śl.), when the “immovable Lakṣmana” is angry: *with him in wrath I seem to see a host of hundreds before me*; 2, 16 with anaphoric repetition in *I if... if... I think I may live like a dead person revived by amṛta*; Kal. Māl. 4, 1 + Vidūṣaka: *sā khu tavassmī tae pingalacchie sārabhaṇḍabhūgharāe miccumāhe va nikkhittā* Bhav., Utt 3, 39 + (pr) *I should like to go off, but .. my hand seems to be bound by ‘concrete mortar’ (vajralepa)*

I refer also to well-known exaggerations, Pañc I, 224 + (NS 6, p. 42, 10) *tad dinam varsaśataprāyam vā kathamrcj jagāma*. We also say: *I have not seen you for ages* and the like; cp. lat *milens mori melius*³; the intellectual wording Mbh. 4, 21, 21 *kālo dīrgha ivābhavat*; cp. the well-known *līlayeva* (e g. Pañc. I, 227 +), and the like.

§ 12 We saw that the common people likes to use a number of substantives and epitheta in fixed combinations, a merchant in my street always talks of *honigzoete kasdrurven* and *hagelwitte bloemkool*, never of *suikerzoete kasdrurven* and *sneeuw witte bloem-*

¹ “In leidenschaftlicher Aufregung ruft General Kleber Napoleon die ungeheuerste der Hyperbeln zu General — *Sie sind gross wie die Welt*”, R. M MEYER, Deutsche Stilistik, p. 228

² Cp. DANDIN, Kāvya. 2, 31 *praśamsopamā*; VĀMANA, Kāvya. 4, 2, 7 *stuti*.

³ J. B. HOFMANN, Lateinische Umgangssprache², 1936, § 83.

kool Thus we have *een reddende engel, zijn trouwe gade*

In a similar way we very often see that certain persons or things are considered as possessing in a high degree a quality or property With many a people an arrow is a model of swiftness, compare eng. *the train went as quick as lightning* with germ. *Blitzzug*, neth *bliksemtrein*, fr *train éclair* etc So a number of things are up to a point regarded as type¹, prototype or ideal, with which other persons or things are compared I remind of French instances, such as *belle comme un ange*, *rire comme un bossu noir comme un corbeau*², neth *zo lelyk als de nacht* Here, to my mind, two kinds of similes are to be distinguished The first kind which I should like to call complementary similes, is represented by fr *belie comme un ange*, eng *as quick as lightning*, germ *haszlich wie die Nacht*, here the model is added to the adjective, it can be added also to a verb, fr *manger comme un ogre*, neth *vloeken als een ketter* In Netherlandish 'street-songs' we find e g (hy) *vermoordt haar als een lam*, o *Belgenvolk, ge hebt als een leeuw gestreden, het was hier stil als in het graf*³.

In Sanskrit literature we find many instances. It is interesting to see that in India the same objects are often used as types or models as is the case with other peoples⁴ The custom of the geese to walk one behind another, germ. *im Gansemarsch gehen*, is found as early as RV 1, 163, 10 *hamsā va śreṇiśo yatante*, cp. 3, 8, 9 The wind is a model of swiftness. RV 6, 45, 32 *yasya vāyor va dravad bhadra rātrī sahasrinī | sadyo dānāya manhate*, 1, 113, 18⁵; 163, 11 *tava cittam vāta va dhrajīmān*, cp 4, 17, 12 *vāto na jūtaḥ*, 8, 34, 17, cp Rām. 4, 44, 5, Mārķ. Pur. 22, 50 has two models *aśvaṃ suparṇāṇḍavikramam*, in a more elaborate manner Bhāsa, Avim 1, 5 +⁶ *mūrtimān va pavano* ., cp also the well-known compound *vātavega-* (e.g. in

¹ *He is as slippery as an eel* e.g. occurs in many a language, cp. F. A. STOETT, *Nederlandsche Spreekwoorden* etc, I⁴ (1923), p. 2

² See also F. BRUNOT, *La pensée et la langue* (1936), p. 692, R M MEYER, *Die altgermanische Poesie* (1889), p. 110

³ WOUTERS and MOORMAN, *Het Straatlied*, *Nieuwe bundel*, Amsterdam 1934, pp 95; 121, 107

⁴ As is well-known, for the sake of comparison also adverbs in *-vat* are used *tapaty ādityavat*, Manu 7, 6, 2. 232 See SPEYER, *Sanskrit Syntax*, § 241

⁵ See GELDNER, *Der Rigveda*, p. 136

⁶ See also § 26.

the Rām , Jāt I, p 384 *vātavegena otarivā* . *vātavegena up-patitvā*)¹ Often also as *swift as thought*, e g Mārķ P 21, 8² The sun is the very picture of splendour RV 8, 34 1⁷ red mares *bhrājante sūryā iva*, 1, 43, 5, Nala 2, 29 *tam bhrājamānam yathā ravim*, cp 5, 43, 26, 30, Mbh. 7, 18, 18 Aśv. Bu 5, 43, cp 13, 41 The lightning suddenly appears and strikes without fail RV 1, 176, 3, Dand Dśkc p 88, 8 Bmd Pur 1, 3, 38 *prādurbhūtas tadid yathā*, Kāl Kum 3, 74 *vanaspatim vajra vāvabhajya*³ Cp also *bhrājamāno 'heva* AV 5, 1, 1,⁴ cp. neth *helder als de dag* — Cow and calve affection and longing, RV passim⁵ Mbh 7, 8, 11 *antakam iva kruddham*, cp 10, 49; 70, *honour like a god* Mārķ P 16, 15 Mbh. 4, 17, 9 *mrgarāja iva śvasan*, Mārķ P 69, 17 *hissing like a serpent*, cp Mbh. 7, 15, 21⁶, being afraid of a s 12, 262, 31 (cp 18), cp 3, 31, 17, the wolf is a devourer Mbh 12, 319, 12⁷, the lion⁸ roars RV 1, 64, 8, is angry Bhāsa, Prat 2, 10. A king or prince is a happy and fortunate man in the eyes of the men in the street. neth *ik voel me als een koning*, — *prins*⁹, also Mbh 12, 177, 52. Other examples e g id 28, 258, 23, cp 261, 19 and 336, 22.

The idea found in this simple kind of simile is at the root of longer ones cp e g Mbh 7, 7, 28 *yathā prajvalitah sūryo yugānte var vasundharām | dīpyan drśyate hi tathā ketuh sarvatra dhīmatah* It occurs also in works of art, see Dandin, Dśkc (N S ¹⁰), p 39, 1 *mandamārutāndolitā latevākampata*, Bhāsa, Avim 5, 4 *I am like a king enjoying victory which he has won . . in the front-ranks of the battle*. Thus we find in 'poetical language' Mrēc

¹ Cp Mbh 12, 337, 36.

² See also Mbh 12, 332, 11

³ R THURNWALD, Forschungen auf den Salomonseln, I (1912), p 27 "und meine Habichtspitze haut wie der Donner".

⁴ As for *like the sun*, see § 65

⁵ See M BLOOMFIELD, Rig-Veda Repetitions, p 583, where a number of similes has been collected "which have assumed a marked formulaic character"

⁶ As for other similes with *śvasati* see § 65

⁷ Cp , in the RV., *agne pašur na yavase*, 5, 9, 4, 6, 2, 9.

⁸ As for the lion in Greek literature H. BLUMNER, Studien zur Geschichte der Metapher im Griechischen, I (Leipzig 1891), p. 209, 198–242 on animals in general In African 'epics', see C MEINHOF, Dichtung der Afrikaner, pp. 65ff.

⁹ From a story from the life of the people. neth *kost en bediening als een prins* ("board and accommodation like a prince").

1, 17 *vyādhānusārācakitā harinīva yāsi* (cp Kāl. Megh 79 *cakitaharīṇa*)¹. But the 'figure' is not a poetical device in itself: RV. 8, 33, '6 *kratvā gaur iva śākinah* is popular and poetical at the same time, cp. also 1, 84, 8. Thus Bhāsa, Yaug. 4, 0 soldier (pr.): *drunk ... and his eyes red as China roses* is quite popular². *My mind revolves as on a potter's wheel*, Viś. Mudrār. 5, 5 (cp Bhag. P. 5, 22, 2)

§ 13. To the second class belong in the first place historical or mythological characters and also things, which are typical in a certain respect. I refer to our Croesus, Maecenas, Job, Methuselah, Salomon, neth. Brugman (a great orator), fr. *pauvre comme Job*, etc. Roman antiquity and Middle Ages liked to have a typical 'hero' possessing certain qualities.³ In the same way in India Śibi was famous for his liberality, e.g. Aśv. Bc. 14, 30, Bh. Pur 1, 20, 20; Alakā was a town renowned for its luxury (Rām. 2, 15, 36 etc., cp. 16, 8), Kāl. Kum. 6, 37; the Nandakavana is a beautiful pleasure-garden Kāl. Urv. 2, 9 + (pr.); Garuda was very swift: Mār. P. 22, 50; Aśv. Bc. 6, 5. According to the popular belief eclipses are caused by the planet Rāhu swallowing the sun and the moon; ChUp. 8, 13; Bhāsa, Yaug. 1, 16; Kāl. Urv. 1, 10; Māl. 4, 16.⁴ Indra has many qualities⁵: vehemence, AV. 5, 20, 2, glory 6, 58, 2; he is victorious 4, 31, 5. In the Rgveda Savitar is the god who has placed a light on high. 4, 13, 2; 7, 72, 4; 4, 14, 2: 4, 6, 2 the poet states that Agni has, *like S.*, placed such a light⁶. Arundhatī is a model of conjugal excellence in a quite natural way Bhav. Utt. 7, 18 +.

I also refer to ChUp 4, 1, 3, 5 *sayugvānam iva raikvam*⁷.

A good many examples are to be met with in simple and natural narrations, such as Nala and the like. Compare Nala 1, 2, 11, 12; 13, 15; 2, 28; also 13, 47; 16, 10, 12, 13; 14-26 etc., Sāv. 1, 25 *devī śrīr iva rūpinī*, 2, 15, also 6, 5; a number of these texts may be reckoned among those of the following

¹ See also § 65.

² See Pet. Wtb., III, 68, s.v. *javā*.

³ R. M. MEYER, *Die altgermanische Poesie*, p. 110.

⁴ I refer to Pet Wtb., VI, 340f.

⁵ HIRZEL, *Gleichnisse...*, pp 15ff.

⁶ Cp. M. BLOOMFIELD, *Rig-Veda Repetitions*, pp. 586f.

⁷ See the commentaries, e.g. ChUp. trad. etc par. E. SENART, Paris 1930, pp. 137f

section. These similes give an opinion about a quality *as quick as lightning, as bold as a lion* etc are judgments, and, at the same time, they praise. But in India, as well as among other peoples, it depends mainly on the individual user of the language whether he will have recourse to such expressions on a large scale or not.

Occurring in a kāvyawork such an expression need not be 'art'. Daṇḍ., Dśkc. p. 125, 3 *taskarah khaṇanakarmanī sagarasutānām ivānyatamah*. In an individual shape Mṛcch. 5, 6 *akṣadyūtajto yudhiṣṭhira ivādhvānam gatah kokilo | haṁsāḥ saṁpratī pāṇḍavā pṛa vanād ajñātacaryāṁ gatāḥ*.

§ 14. Primitive and naive speakers, the common people in general, like prolixity and circumstantiality; in popular songs and tales we find many cases of repetition, long-windedness and recapitulation — I remind of the 'volkstümliche Wiederholung', of the 'nachtragliche Korrekturen' and the 'Wiederholungen aus Deutlichkeitsbedürfnis'¹ —; they often make use of epeexegetic additions, explanations, examples; standing phrases, proverbial sayings, 'geflügelte Worte', 'images' render them many a service. So do similes. In the following instances the second part of the utterance contains a simile which 'repeats' the first part: *neth. wat was die trein vol, we zaten als haringen in een tonnetje!*, or in a shorter form: *we zaten er op elkaar gepakt, als haring in een tonnetje!*; ... *en een mooie vestibule met tegeltjes!*, *net een schilderijje van Vermeer!*; in the first example the simile is a common one ('cliché'), in the second it is an original one. In a Lithuanian *daina ich liess das Magdlein aufwachsen, liess es wie die Beere reifen*.²

The general speaker and reader dispose of a large number of clichés. As for clichés, they "perdent toute saveur à force d'être répétées, mais ils peuvent, dans certains cas, passer pour des créations originales"³. Sometimes they are used consciously; 'eminent' men add new locutions to the existing. In living languages it is already often very difficult to know the origin of

¹ See e.g. W. HAVERS, Handbuch der erklärenden Syntax, pp. 119; 149, 175; H. WUNDERLICH, Unsere Umgangssprache (1894), pp. 112ff.

² See VAN DER MEULEN, o.c., p. 44, who quotes the text.

³ Cf. BALLY, Traité de stylistique française, I², p. 85.

these locutions and to distinguish between mere cliché and innovations if such be the case. However that may be, in my opinion it is beyond doubt that also in ancient India the general speaker many a time must have made use of epexegetical and expressive additions in the form of similes. Hariv. 16360 *tat sarvām nāśam āyāti himam suryodaye yathā*¹ can be rendered literally in Netherl. *dat alles gaat onder als sneeuw in de zon*, in English they say *it melts like butter in the sun*, in French *fondre comme la cire au soleil*.

AV. 10, 1, 14 (against witchcraft and its practisers) *apa krāma nānadatī vṇaddhā gardabhīva*, "go away, making much noise, like an unfastened she-ass" AV. 19, 55, (1 I and) 7 1 II we find *aḥar aḥar balim it te haranto aśvāyeva tiṣṭhate ghāsam agne* (b occurs in a slightly different form in many other texts, see Ved. Conc. 128), cp. 8, 6, 19. Also AV. 10, 1, 30 I. The upameya and its attribute may stand in a later pāda e.g. AV. 5, 18, 15 *usur va dīgdhā* . | *sā brāhmanasyesur ghorā*; this type however will be treated further on.² It has been remarked by WHITNEY-LANMAN³ that AV. 19, 45, 2 and 57, 5 have the same thought. "the evil dream which is in us etc. let him put it on", but 57, 5 *niskam va*, "like a necklace" has been added, the adj. *devapīyuh* . in 57, 5 are more vigorous words too than *durhārdo* .. in 45, 2

Similes of this kind are very frequently met with in the epic. Mbh. 8, 53, 12 *arjunam sisicur bāṇanī parvatam jaladā va*, 9, 25, 56, 58, 33* *anyonyam jaghnatur vīrau pankasthau mahisāv va*; 11, 25, 21 *dronāstram abhīhatyarṣa* ... | *mahesvāso hatah śete nadyā hata va drumah*⁴, 12, 174, 51. When, Rām. 4, 36, 1ff, Tārā's pleading has won Lakṣmana, Sugrīva sees his altered mood and "casts aside fear and fright like a raiment heavy with rain", (2) *sumahat trāsam vastram kṛnnam ivātyajat*, a garment soaked by rain is a heavy burden, we should have said "het was een pak van zijn hart" ("it was a weight off his mind"), 57, 15 *we did not find Sītā rātrau sūryaprabhām va*, 4, 11, 2;

¹ Cp. Rām. 2, 85, 18.

² See § 27.

³ Ath. V. Samhitā, Harvard 1905, pp. 969f and 998

⁴ Cp. in Lithuanian *our brother fell (in the battle) like an oak in the forest* (V. D. MEULEN, o.c., p. 59)

22, 12, 16, 19, 16, 13, 29, 33, 22, 17, 26, 2, 33, 64 As a rule the fourth pāda is entirely taken up by the simile Bhāsa, Cārud 1, 6 + Vidūsaka *ede dāni dāsievuttā are running away from the house like cowherd's boys scared by gnats*, Pratimā 7, 13 II (śloka) *the world shines bright again somasyevodaye*, "as at the rising of the moon". Kāl Māl 2, 9 the poet gives an idea he expresses elsewhere (see Ragh 1, 10, cp Kum 6, 20, Śak 1, 2) in the form of a simile (śloka) *the teaching of a teacher is faultless when it does not turn black (prove faulty) in the presence of learned men just like gold (that is tested) in the fire* Ibid 3, 1 + vid. (pr) *the girl being guarded .. more carefully like a treasure guarded by a nāga*¹

A longer simile, taken from the Mbh Nala 13, 9 . *vegah karinām duhsaho 'bhavat | nagāgrād va śīrnānām patatām ksītau*. Such additional similes which fill up the entire second part of a stanza are not unfrequent in post-epic poetry² Bhāsa, Cār 1, 26 the vita says *because people like me beggared him, he has been totally stripped . he is like a great tank dried up in summer*, Yaug 1, 12, Aṭhis. 1, 2 *whence this ear-deafening noise?* *pracandavātoddhatabhīmagāminām balāhakānām va khe 'bhīgar-jatām*, here we find a delineating expatiation with a long compound, homoioteleuton, hyperbole, in colloquial speech *like thunderclouds* should have sufficed. An independent second part id. 2, 7 (with assonance), 6, 14 (rhyme) More natural, however, in a strengthening addition, in anger Prat 3, 16 (śl). Cp e.g. also Kāl Śak 2, 18, 3, 11.

Nor are they unfrequent in strophes in works of art Kāl Urv 1, 10 *etāh sutaṇu mukhaṃ te sakhyah paśyanti hemakūta-gatāh | pratyāgataprasādam candram ivopaplavān muktam*, here too the author refers to a well-known fact or event, the stating of which enforces his words, for people anxious to see the moon as soon as she is cleared from an eclipse stand in a prominent place and raise shouts See however also § 54 Cp. e.g. Urv 1, 17, Śak 3, 3, 5, 13 where S veiled with her beauty not very visible is compared to a young sprout among faded leaves.

The character of this simile may vary Kāl. Urv 1, 10 + R., one of the companions of U says. *here comes the rājarsi with ..*

¹ Cp E W HOPKINS, Epic Mythology, p 149.

² See also §§ 53; 54

U. accompanied by C. visāhāsamīvagado via cando, "looking like the moon gone near to Viśākhā". Here, as is already the case in a number of the similes quoted higher up, the simile has been incorporated in the sentence and is no longer a mere addition, cp Māl. 2, 13+ (pr.). — Sometimes a proverbial saying or the like precedes the matter of fact expression: Manu 7, 20.

§ 15. It is a well-known fact that in a comparatively large number of cases the Indo-European languages in their earlier stages used adjectives where in modern languages adverbs or adverbial constructions are found. This holds good especially for adjectives denoting place, rank, time, number etc. We all know Greek instances such as *πρώτος ἦλθεν, χθιστός ἔβη* etc.¹. In Vedic and Sanskrit we find similar expressions ŚB. 6, 4, 4, 22 *udīcah prācah paśūn pra srjati*, Ait. Br. 6, 28, 2 *tā vihr̥tāh śam-sati*². This, however, is not the only equivalent of adverbs, as I have stated elsewhere³, paronomastic figures (e.g. *svr̥dhā vardhamānam*) may be used in this way.

Now, the said phenomenon is not only peculiar to the earlier stages of the languages of the Indo-European family, it has a wider area. SPITZER has remarked that the adverb is "das sprachliche Spiegelbild des abstraktionsfähigeren Menschen".⁴ And indeed, it is true that the naive and artless language of the common people, that daily parlance in many a case can dispense with adverbs when we say: neth. *gooi een raam open*, we mean. *doe snel een raam open*, when we say: eng. *to run*, we mean *to go quickly, to feed: to eat gluttonously*. Instead of *he was praised extravagantly* we often hear. *he was praised to the skies*. Here⁵, as is often the case, these phenomena are at the bottom of

¹ See K. BRUGMANN-A. THUMB, Griechische Grammatik⁴ (1913), pp 476, 478f.

² See DELBRÜCK, Altindische Syntax, pp. 78f., SPEYER, Vedische und Sanskrit-Syntax, p. 31 (§ 100)

³ J. GONDA, Stilistische Studie over Atharvaveda I-VII, p. 66.

⁴ L. SPITZER, Zeitschrift für romanische Philologie, 45 (1925), S. 286 Cp. also E. FRAENKEL, MSL. 19, 1 ff., STERN, o c, p. 23, THURN-WALD, in EBERT, Reallexikon der Vorgeschichte, 10, 302 "Das primitive Denken vollzieht sich ... mehr in Bildern als in Worten. Zur Zusammenfassung bedient es sich der Symbole statt der Abstraktionen."

⁵ See also E. HOFMANN, Ausdrucksverstärkung, Göttingen 1930, p. 108.

characteristics of poetical language *nimmt er den Handschuh mit keckem Finger, mit schmeichelndem Munde sie fleht* (SCHILLER).¹ Now, in my opinion, also similes occur 'instead of an adverb'. *As old as Methusalah* means "very old"², *as mute as a fish* means "totally mute". If we ask a child how high a thing is, the answer may be *as high as a tree, the sky* etc. The common people do not say *ich gehe schnell*, but *ich renne wie ein Wiesel*³; neth. *hy sloeg om als het blad van een boom* ("he changed like a leaf on a tree") means "hy veranderde plotseling en zonder moeite".

Similes of this kind are not unfrequently met with in early Indian literature. AV. 6, 142, 2 *ucchrayasva dyaur iva* (to the grain) "rise up like the sky", of course this is an exaggeration, but it is a quite natural one among 'primitive' people, and also among educated people when they go into raptures; cp. 5, 19, 1 *atimātram avardhanta / nod va divam asprśan*, 6, 142, 2 we also have. *be unexhausted, like the ocean*. The war-drum thunders like a lion AV. 5, 20, 1, 2 AV. 9, 3, 17 *mitā prthivyām tiṣṭhasi hastinīva padvatī* (to a house), "that is, apparently, heavy and big on the four corner posts, like an elephant . . on its feet"⁴. 8, 6, 7 the idea of chastity has been rendered in the following way: *who lies with you* (a pregnant woman) ... *bhrātā bhūtvā pteva ca*. The idea 'carefully' is often expressed: *as a father to his son(s)* (cp. 10, 6, 5), or *māteva*, "like a mother, motherly" (5, 28, 5), but these locutions will be treated further on⁵ *taskarā iva* (e.g. RV. 1, 191, 5), "like thieves" means "furtively, by stealth", here too the idea is expressed in the same way in several languages,⁶ RV. 1, 53, 1 the poet wishes to say between the lines that he has used his best endeavours: *c nū cid dhi ratnaṃ sasatām ivāvidan*, "noch nie hat ja einer das Kleinod wie (ein Dieb) bei Schlafenden gefunden, d.h. so muhelos."⁷ 1, 52, 5⁸; 1, 116, 10. — Often in epic language: I refer to Nala, 10, 22 *iyam ... | unmatteva ...*

¹ Cp. HAYERS, Handbuch der erklärenden Syntax, 1931, p. 149.

² *Het huis is zo oud als de wereld*, HILDEBRAND, Camera Obscura, Keesje

³ Cp. J. WEIGERT, Des Volkes Denken und Reden, Freiburg im Breisgau 1925, p. 24.

⁴ WHITNEY-LANMAN, o.c., p. 527.

⁵ See § 18f.

⁶ See § 12

⁷ GELDNER, Der Rigveda übersetzt, I (1923), pp. 61f.

⁸ GELDNER, o.c., p. 59.

katham buddhvā bhaviṣyati; 13, 47, 8, 1 *unmattavad* and the like, which may be considered as 'type-similes'¹ — Nala 14, 6 Nārada who had been taken in by Karkotaka said to him *tistha tvam sthāvara iva*, "like an immovable thing, like a tree", that means "rooted to the spot", germ "wie angewurzelt", fr. "atterré" Mbh 4, 16, 52 *uttisthottistha kim śeṣe bhūmasena yathā mrtak*, this image too is well-known in other languages, cp. fr *faire le mort*, in another context Jāt. I, p. 456 *arrived at the cemetery you will go to the top of the mound and lie down matako vya*.² Mbh 12, 177, 26 *labdhanāśe yathā mrtyuk*, "[bitter] wie der Tod"³, 316, 25 Bmd Pur. 1, 5, 19 ~ Vā Pur 6, 22⁴ *gṛisṛgam vocrchritak* — Thus Bhār Kir. 11, 33 *pumsām gaur ivanti vidheyatām* needs not be a poet's invention

Now and then this figure of speech dubbles out into a long period Bhāsa, Prat. 4, 11 (śl.) *your brother Bh., samkrāntam yatra te rūpam ādarśa iva tisthati*, the image is familiar to several peoples.

It is often very difficult to distinguish between this 'class' and the following, for many a time these similes betray clear vision and are indicative of a vivid style of narration Mbh. 7, 8, 15 *sa tathā teṣv anīkesu pāṇḍuputrasya .. | kālavad vyacarad droṇo yuveda sthaviro balī*, here, it is true, the simile is an equivalent for "very forcefully", but it is at the same time a vivid painting from life. Other instances. Mbh. 4, 16, 41 *draupady uvāca kicako māvadhīt... | sabhāyām paśyato rājño yathaiṣa vijane tathā*, in a conscious contrast to the first half of the line, 4, 13, 33 a popular predilection for vigorous language is betrayed: *bāhubhiḥ samatāḍyetām āyasarḥ pariḥar iva* Bhāsa, Prat 2, 0.

It seems to me that this kind does not appear in kāvya very frequently: Kāl. Ragh. 15, 19 the *rākṣasa*, after having threatened Ś., desiring to kill him, tore up a tall tree *mustāstambam iva*, "as if it were a stalk of the mustā-grass", which is uprooted with ease, Mallinātha explains the simile correctly: *akleśena*. Less popular is Kāl. Ragh. 16, 40, where instead of "having entered his residence with feelings of joy and affection" the poet says

¹ See § 12.

² Cp. § 2.

³ DEUSSEN-STRAUSS, Vier philos. Texte des Mbh., p 127.

⁴ See KIRFEL, Das Purāṇa Pañcalakṣaṇa, 1927, p. 61.

".. like a lover entering the heart of his beloved" *kāmīva kān-tāhrdayam*, still more artificial 5, 63, with *yamaka Bhār Kir 4, 1*

§ 16 Some of these instances give already rise to the following remarks. It has been stated higher up, that popular speech has a dislike to abstraction. Instead of neth. *hy zal altyd eerlyk blyven* we are accustomed to say in familiar and popular speech *hy zal eerlyk blyven zolang als hy leeft*, or *hy zal z'n leven lang eerlyk blyven*; instead of *he will always love his books* *he will love his books as long as he lives*, instead of *I have him completely in my power. I have him under my thumb*, instead of *he will encroach on my kindness if you give him an inch, he will take an ell*, etc. etc. In many a language we find popular locutions such as *he and his wife led a cat-and-dog life*, or such as *a devil of a fellow*, neth. *een schat van een vrouw, fr'un fripon de valet*¹. Very common is the metaphor *his brother was always a lazy dog, this horse is an old screw*. By the side of neth. *hy is een ezel*, we find *hy is zo dom als een ezel, he is an ass. he is as stupid as an ass*. Here the simile seems to be less popular and less 'primitive'², although it appears to me that this point is worthy of closer inquiry. Yet the simile is found too by the side of *ze is een engel*, which means *ze is lief als een engel* ("she is as sweet as an angel") we often say ... *zo goed als een engel* ("as good as an angel"); further: *hy is zo eerlyk (zo trouw) als goud* ("he is as true as gold", viz. "... as daylight"); eng. *I feel like a fish out of water*, for. ... *out of my element*.

When we speak with emphasis, in anger, excitedly etc., we use locutions such as: neth. *hy zag zo wit als een lijk (as pale as a corpse)*, *hy zag zo wit als dat laken (he looked as pale as that sheet)*, and in my feeling this longer locution has a more affective character, is more 'affektentladend' than the compound neth. *lykbleek*. Thus, in my feeling the three following expressions form a climax. *hy is een koe* ("he is a cow", which means "he is stupid"), *hy is zo dom als een koe* ("he is as stupid as a cow"), *hy is zo stom als het achterend van een koe* ("he is as stupid as the back-part of a cow") Or: *bliksemsnel* ("with lightning speed"), *zo gauw als de bliksem, zo gauw als de gesmeerde bliksem* ("as swift as greased lightning"). And in the same way it seems to me that

¹ Cp. L. SPITZER, *Zeitschr. f. Roman Philol.* 45 (1925), p. 22, n. 2

² See J. B. HOFMANN, *Lateinische Umgangssprache*, p. 157

hij zag zo rood als vuur ("he looked as red as fire") by the side of *hij zag vuurrood* ("fiery red, crimson") or *hij stond daar zo stijf als een stuk hout, ... als een panlat* etc. by the side of *hij stond daar stokstijf* must not be conceived in the first place as appertaining to intellectual speech ('Intellektualsprache'), as is maintained by HOFMANN¹ Sometimes both expressions are used in 'repetition with variation'², e.g. a house-owner lays stress upon the good qualities of the cellar of the house which he wishes to let *die kelder is kurkdroog mijnheer, hij is zo droog als kurk* ("the cellar is 'cork-dry' sir, it is 'as d. as c'", which means "as dry as dust").

Thus, colloquial speech has a special liking for expressiveness, for "das Sinnlich-anschauliche", for vivid description, vigorous expressions, exaggeration; it likes to lay on the colours thick. Here the words of VON DER GABELENTZ hold good³. "den höchsten Grad der Verständlichkeit erreicht nur das Anschauliche, und dies musz möglichst konkret, sinnfällig sein." Now, what does it mean 'Anschaulichkeit'? With good reason, ERDMANN has pointed out the double meaning of the term 'abstrakte Ausdrucksweise'⁴. "Bald gilt sie als das Zeichen eines gelehrten, wissenschaftlichen Geistes, bald betont man, dasz gerade Ungebildete und Kinder sich wegen der Armut ihrer Sprache sehr allgemeiner Ausdrücke zu bedienen pflegen . . . Beides ist einseitig, aber in gewisser Hinsicht zutreffend, (aber) ... nur der Zweck der Wörter und die Motive ihres Gebrauchs bestimmen Wert oder Unwert einer abstrakten Ausdrucksweise." We have to take the term 'anschauliche Sprache' not as language that "affects the organ of sight", but in another way, viz. as contrasted with abstract language. Thus 'anschauliche Sprache' may be contrasted with exact, intellectual, scientific speech, but also with vague and colourless speech of illiterate persons, children etc who often have a special liking for quite general notions and vague terms. 'Anschauliche Sprache' produces clear and vivid images of phantasy and memory. "Anschaulich ... ist wohl alles, was mit

¹ O c., p. 157.

² See my *Stilistische Studie over Atharvaveda*, p. 19.

³ G. VON DER GABELENTZ, *Die Sprachwissenschaft*, Leipzig 1901, p. 239.

⁴ K. O. ERDMANN, *Die Bedeutung des Wortes*³, Leipzig 1922, pp. 196ff.

irgend einem Sinne (oder auch mit dem 'inneren Sinne' d. h. mit der Phantasie) direkt wahrnehmbar, was irgend einem Sinne oder der Phantasie als Einzelgegenstand unmittelbar gegenwärtig und direkt erlebbar ist. Anschaulich ... ist also das Gegenteil vom Abstrakten, Allgemeinen und Begrifflichen"¹.

Now, it is well known that not unfrequently sentences containing a simile are illustrated by a gesture. A native of Flores, telling then a serpent appeared .. as long as this, will indicate the length by gesticulation² and I myself, saying: *as pale as that table-cloth*, point to the table-cloth

As I take it, in ancient Indian texts too similes help to promote this sort of 'Anschaulichkeit'. Jaim. Br. no 142 C. *te hot-krodam cakrire yathā śreṣṭhiny āgata utkrodam kurvate tatkhā*, (when Indra came back, after having been looked for by the gods) "they raised shouts of joy, just like the shouts of joy which are raised when a man of high rank approaches", p. 220, l. 35 *atho yathā taptān pāmsūn upanahyātīyāt tādrk tat*, p. 211, l. 30 *tad yathā drtim ucchvāsitam punar abhādhamet tādrk tat*; see also no. 34 in fine 3 ×; no. 96 in fine 2 ×. These instances prove that in the 'arid Brāhmaṇas' now and then a vivid and elucidating simile appears which, referring to things and events of everyday life, appeals to the feelings and memory of the hearers. An explanation which moves heart and phantasy of the public we find e.g. AV. 10, 4, 19 (against snakes) ... *I have grasped together their heads, as a fisherman the karvara*, 8, 6, 24 *they (viz. demons) that creep away from the sun, as a daughter-in-law away from her father-in-law*, cp also 12, 3, 33. RV. 2, 5, 4 (*vidvān asya vrata dhruvā vayā ivānu rohate* (cp. Ved. Conc. 839). See also AV. 10, 1, 19d. Mān. G S. 1, 1, 14 when a vratacārīn takes to the water, he has to emerge as soon as possible (cp the Commentary); the text, however, runs. *yadr snāyād danda vāpsu plavet*, "he has to emerge (as stiff) as a stick". — For epic language, see for instance Mbh. 12, 352, 5 *maharṣir nārado .. paryeti kramaśo lokān vāyur avyāhato yathā*; 354, 16 *mamāpi*

¹ K. S. LAURILA, Sprache und Anschauung, Neuphilologische Mitteilungen, 29, Helsingfors 1928, p. 139. See also R. M. MEYER, in Neue Jahrbücher für das klassische Altertum . . ., 21 (1908), pp. 63 f., A. KNABENHANS, Zur Psychologie des primitiven Menschen, Archives suisses des traditions populaires, 23, Bazel 1920, pp. 154 f.

² According to Pater A. BURGER.

matir āvignā meghalekheva vāyunā, 176, 16, 57 44 *saṁ bhāṣate*, *jahyād bhīrṇām nāvam ivārṇave*, 5, 33, 79, 13, 90, 46 *śālāntare gaur iva naṣṭavatsā*, cp Manu 3, 141; 179¹, 6, 45.

A quite natural and at the same time 'anschauliches' simile we find e.g. Bhāsa, Car 1, 28 + Vidūṣaka these two are worrying each other *like two ill-trained bullocks* pulling a cart in opposite directions. Often such a simile typifies a person or a situation. Kāl. Māl. 2, 13 + Vidūṣaka (pr.) *your Majesty is like a bird hovering in the proximity of a slaughter house, desirous of meat, but afraid*, Urv 2, 0 maid (pr.) *here stands (the vidūṣaka) like a monkey drawn in a picture*. See also e.g. Mrcchak N.S.⁶, p. 10 (pr.), p. 40 (pr.), p. 66, 6 (pr.), p. 71, 15. It is evident that in such cases the simile has been enlarged: a whole scene is put before our eyes. In this sort of contexts the same type is met with in other languages too. I quote from a popular story in a Netherlandish periodical: *zij heeft natuurlyk allang de beate bewondering gezien, die van oom aflekt als water van een overlopende dakgoot* ("of course she has already noticed the beatific admiration oozing from uncle like water leaking from an overflowing spout")

Rām. 12, 17 the combat between Vālin and Sugrīva: *gagane grahayor ghoram budhāṅgārakayor iva*; here GRIFFITH² remarks that in MILTON's Paradise Lost, VI the encounter between Michael and Satan is described in a similar way, 12, 41 Sugrīva with the *gajapuspī* bears a resemblance to a dark cloud garlanded with cranes in the dusk of evening; 16, 24 *sa tu vṛkṣena nīrbhagnah sālātādanavīhvalaḥ | gurubhārabharākrāntā nauḥ sasārtheva sāgare*, 19, 6 flying apes are compared to helpless deer *yūthād iva paribhraṣṭān mṛgān nihatayūthapān*, 33, 18 Lakṣmaṇa enters the palace of Sugrīva without being refused admittance, just like the sun (enters) a great cloud, 67, 48 an anxious person is described as a traveller who has lost his caravan and sits down in the great forest. See also 4, 11, 14, 14, 10, 17, 21 (cf 16, 37, 17, 1 II), 23, 29 etc., 18, 49, 19, 12, 31, 19. Many of these similes are very fine.

§ 17. In these instances from the Rāmāyaṇa the simile is as a rule longer and more elaborated, its form is somewhat more poet-

¹ See § 47.

² R. T. H. GRIFFITH, The Ramayan of Valmiki, Benares 1895, p. 339, n. 1.

tical, but essentially its character remains the same. As is well-known, poetical speech and popular speech are to a certain extent allied. This alliance is due to the fact that both aim at 'Anschaulichkeit'. "Die Kunst der dichterischen Sprachgestaltung besteht darin, Worte auszuwählen und dieselben in solche Verbindung mit einander zu setzen, daß die Anschaulichkeit des Wortsinns der Sätze und Satzverbindungen zu einem Maximum gesteigert wird. Alle sogenannten 'poetischen Figuren' dienen diesem Zweck, was wohl nachgerade als allgemein anerkannt gelten darf, teils direkt durch Ersatz einer abstrakteren Vorstellung durch eine konkrete, teils indirekt durch einschränkende Veranschaulichung der abstrakteren Vorstellung vermittelt Beifügung von konkreteren, oder durch gegenseitige einschränkende Veranschaulichung"¹. But we have to add. "Die Anschaulichkeit ist in der 'Wortkunst' nicht Selbstzweck, sondern nur Mittel zum Zweck. Der Endzweck ist die innere Erlebnistätigkeit, speziell eine durch die Anschaulichkeit bedingte Gefühlswirkung"². When we peruse *kāvya*-works, we must confess that here too these remarks hold good. At times we find concise similes visualizing a well-known image, scene or event. See f.i. *Bhār. Kir. 4, 17 vallavīr abhipranrtīā va vārayoṣitah*, "cowherdwomen dancing like courtesans".

It goes without saying that in later texts too a very short example may be found. *Kathās 62, 165 sotsāhā pāsabaddheva tisthati*, *Bhār. Kir. 1, 21 śirobhir uhyate . mālyam vāsya śāsana-*. Then again we meet with a more elaborate specimen. *Bhār. Kir. 12, 20 kakude vrsasya kṛtabāhum ... | sparśasukham anubhavantam umākucayugmamandala ivāṇḍracandane*, 4, 27, *Ind. Spr.*² 6599.

At times these similes are clearly elucidating, e.g. *Bhāg. gītā 6, 38 . . chinnābhram va naśyati*, with a typical example: *id. 2, 58 yadā samharate cāyam kūrmo 'ngānīva sarvaśah | indriyāṇi*³. But in the works of great poets the chief part they play is often to be a thing of fancy and beauty: *Kāl. Me. 15 yena śyāmam vapur atitarām kāntim āpatsyate te | varheṇeva sphuritarucinā gopaveśasya viṣṇoh*, *Kum. 7, 8, 11, 39; 50, Śak. 1, 31*.

¹ E. VON HARTMANN, *Die Philosophie des Schönen*, p. 717.

² W. HAVERS, *Handbuch der erklärenden Syntax*, p. 151.

³ Compare the 'didactical similes', §§ 49ff.

§ 18. Now, there is another very important point. As we all know, words may have a quite different 'secondary meaning' and 'Gefühlswert'. "Die fromme Inschrift einer Diakonissenanstalt konnte kaum lauten: *Ich bin der Herr, dein Doktor, oder dein Heilkünstler, oder dein Medikus, sondern nur: Ich bin der Herr, dein Arzt*"¹. The words *table* in *that table is broken*, and *mother* in *my (your) mother is ill* appeal differently to the soul of the speaker (hearer). Not only substantives, but also verbs and adjectives do so the words *poor, rich, drunk, to die*, often arouse certain feelings.

As appears from the above-quoted German instance, we find often many synonyms differing in style, in degree of 'affectivity', in 'secondary meaning', in 'Gefühlswert'. Cp e.g., neth. *hoofd*, engl *head* *kop*, engl *pate*, neth. *mijn zoon*, engl. *my son*. *m'n jongen*, engl *my boy*, neth. *dronken* · *aangeschoten* · *bezopen*. Now, it seems to me that ideas that may be expressed with a number of synonyms differing in style, 'secondary meaning' and 'Gefühlswert', are often also worded in standing phrases containing a simile. Thus we have *as drunk as a fly*, ... *as a lord*², *as old as Methusalah*, *as the hills*, *as dead as a herring*, ... *as Queen Anne*, etc. 'Affektbetonte' verbs or adjectives are often connected with various similes³. The affect with which these ideas are charged tries to find many ways to release itself. Besides, there are several ideas that are used by preference in similes. As we have state above⁴, *mother*, *lightning*, *arrow* etc. are frequent upamānas in several languages. This fact I should like to explain from the highly affective character of these ideas that make great impression on heart and mind of most people⁵. Thus in spontaneous and natural language similes are often 'gefühlsmässig-anschaulich', 'affektiv'. When we must express in words feelings and sensations which can only with great difficulty be worded in an intellectual and objective way and which may be

¹ K. O ERDMANN, *Die Bedeutung des Wortes*, p. 118.

² Neth. *zo zat als een zwijn*, — *als een dragonder* and many others.

³ Netherl. examples: De VOOYS, o.c., p. 188. In standing phrases in general see e.g. SMITH and HESLITINE, *The Oxford Dictionary of English proverbs* (1935), Index, pp. 613ff.

⁴ See § 12

⁵ (In Kwakiutl) metaphorical expressions are used particularly when describing the greatness of a chief or of a warrior. The chief is compared to a mountain, ... *a rock which cannot be climbed*, ..., F. BOAS, *Primitive Art*, Oslo 1927, p. 321; also p. 327.

different with every single individual, we are often compelled to look for an approximating expression which is, in this case, the most adequate interpretation. Impressions and feelings are often vague and indefinite to such an extent that only an image that lacks clear-cut features may be in some degree an adequate wording. There again the value of the employment of an image is that it imposes on the hearer too a not completely unequivocal conception. He too may digest it inwardly just as he likes. Thus the image "ruckt in größere seelische Nahe".

When the impressions made upon us by events that happened before synchronize with what new events being similar feel to us, it may be that we also use the words suited to the former events in connection with the new ones. This similarity need not be objective, but may be existent only in the feelings of the speaker. We must not lose sight of the fact, that similes may be rooted in our inward reactions in such a degree that it is almost impossible to form an idea of what they are like. In Sanskrit and other literatures an image frequently met with, is the swiftness of the mind compared with that of the wind: *manojava-* etc. Yet, ERDMANN¹ remarks with good reason that in the following lines of LEUTHOLD "der eigentliche Vergleichungspunkt ... nur im Gefühl (liegt)": *Wie der Sturmwind, der über die Heide pfeift | Ohne Rast, ohne Ruh, ohne sichere Statt, | So mein heisser Sinn über die Erde schweift, | So mein Herz, das keinen Freund, keine Heimat hat.* As is well known in the Homeric simile the poet is often carried away by his feelings and imagination to such a degree that he loses sight of the proper object of the simile and thus it becomes independent. Yet, this is not necessary². In a popular song from Carinthia e.g.³ the lonely and deserted man is compared to a stone on the road, over which everyone passes silently; here both 'Gefühl' and object of the simile are present. Similes and metaphors often derive their existence from the emotional value of a word. In colloquial speech we use often a simile when we pour out our hearts, when we reprehend, scorn or threaten a

¹ O.c., p. 210. I refer also to G. VAN DER LEEUW, *La structure de la mentalité primitive*, Paris 1928, p. 3, J. VAN GINNEKEN, *Het gevoel in taal en woordkunst*, Leuvenseche Bydragen, 10 (1912-3), pp. 51ff.

² Compare also G. VAN DER LEEUW, *Wegen en Grenzen*, 1932, p. 12.

³ See O. BÖCKEL, *Psychologie der Volksdichtung*, Leipzig 1906, p. 277.

person, or when we make fun of him. Husband to wife, who for a whole day keeps silence with apathy, in a sudden outburst neth *wat zit je er vandaag weer by als een schelvis (what a sack of old bones you look again to-day)*'. "Das Gleichnis in der Edda wird in der Regel dann gebraucht, wenn der Dichter die Gefühle seiner Helden recht stark zum Ausdruck bringen will ... Schmahend, klagend, lobpreisend oder spottend, immer verrath er eine gehobene leidenschaftlich erregte Stimmung"¹

This class of similes is in the first place met with in stage-plays Bhāsa, Avim 3, 19 in one of those stanzas which further the progress of the play² *kim kampase pavanavegahatā lateva*, "why do you tremble like a creeper smitten by the violence of the wind", we should say *wat sta je daar te beven als een riet!*, cp. eng. *as frail as a reed* etc. Bhāsa, Vās. 4, 1 + Vid (pr.); Yaug 3, 1 +, Cār 1, 1 +. Kāl. Māl. 2, 13 + Vid (pr.) ... *my stomach burns like an oven* . ; 4, 1 + id. *she fares like a cuckoo in the grip of a cat*, "(he) means that she is in a sore plight" (Kale³); 17 + the female doorkeeper of the palace (pr) . . . *the princess was trembling like a frail leaf in a strong wind*, 5, 6 + Mālavikā (pr.) *my heart trembles like the water lying on a lotus-leaf*, Bhav Utt. 3, 7. Ratnāv p. 48⁴ (2, 5 + Vid.) in a menace: *I will fell you ... like a ripe wood-apple fruit*; cp. 97 in a question. An emphatical request: Kāl. Śak. 1, 10 in a more poetical form *let not ... that arrow be cast on the delicate body of the deer, like fire on a heap of flowers*, the like 4, 18 + (pr) in an 'affektische Frage'. A 'lyrical effusion' Ratnāv. p. 113 (4, 2 +). — Being consumed by an intense emotion the speaker produces variations or enlargements. — That this simile occurs very frequently in poetry is a matter of course: the effectiveness of poetry does not depend upon the power of description which releases clear mental notions, but upon the energy with which its words arouse emotions.

§ 19. Often the affective character of a simile is obvious from the context and from the meaning and 'Gefühlswert' of the upamāna *The teachers of that school are just like fathers and mothers*

¹ A. HOFFMANN, Der bildliche Ausdruck im Béowulf und in der Edda, Englische Studien 6 (1883), p. 198.

² See A. B. KEITH, The sanskrit drama, Oxford 1924, p. 114.

³ The M of K. ... ed. by M. R. Kale⁴, 1918, Notes, p. 76.

⁴ Ed. Balamanorama Press, Madras 1935

to the children, here it is quite obvious what is meant. The feelings of the man who after travelling a long time in the intense heat of the tropical or subtropical sun reaches a shady place are immediately clear to us. See e.g. RV. 2, 33, 6 *ghṛṇīva chāyām arapā aśīya*; 6, 16, 38 *upa chāyām iva ghr̥ṇer aganma sarma te vayam | agne*. A person is seized by Death like a sleeping deer by a tiger, Mbh. 12, 175, 18. See also e.g. Mbh. 12, 176, 19, 177, 50 *grīṣme śītam iva hradam*, 361, 6 *as the cultivator the rain-cloud*. Instances from the Rām. 4, 17, 22 Vālin complains of Rāma who has hit him with an arrow and upbraids him with his ungenerous way of acting. (*tvām*) *jāne pāpasamācāraṃ tṛṇaḥ kūpaṃ vāvṛtam*, the next verse has alliterating words, 48, 20, 7, 66, 37 Hanumān is encouraged to leap over the ocean. *viṣaṇṇā harayaḥ sarve Hanuman kim upekṣase | vikramasva mahāvegā Viṣṇuḥ trīṇ vikramān iva* (cp. 67, 3 II). The subjects of king Śuddhodana reposed peacefully *pitur ankagatā iva*, "like children in their father's lap", Aśv. Saund. 2, 7. Of course, father and mother often form part of similes. In the Isle of Flores (Neth. East Indies) old men used to say to a missionary who gave them a quid of tobacco *just like a father who loves his children and gives them presents you give to us, old men, good things*¹. When AV. 2, 28, 5² we find *māteṽāsmā adite śarma yacha*, these words mean "give him shelter, o Aditi, in a very careful manner", but how this meaning may be couched in more exquisite terms than in the literal rendering "give him s. like a mother"³, which will be understood in all times and in all languages⁴, cp. RV. 1, 41, 2, Jaim. Br. 143 in initio; 140 at the end; Mbh. 11, 16, 37, Rām. 4, 22, 9 *putram vaurasam*, see above, § 2; Mārķ. Pur. 25, 8, 69, 23; 81, 4; 24, 3, 91, 25. Uttarak. 3, 19 *sutam iva manasā tvām. smarāmi*; — Harṣa, Nāg. 1, 7+ (art).

§ 20. More than once, however, it proves necessary to have a profound knowledge of the culture and the life of the people,

¹ From a letter from Pater A. BURGER. After the missionary had left them for Europe, a man of the people of Manggarai wrote him: *just like an orphan, who has lost father and mother, I look about here*.

² See also Ved. Conc. 703.

³ Also e.g. Bhāsa, Prat. 4, 13.

⁴ As for the order of words, see § 27.

whose similes we wish to understand¹ With us, in the Netherlands, we attach to a hog or porker the notion of dirtiness, debauchery, meanness, with the people of Flores, on the contrary, *saya piara dia seperu babi*, 'I bring him up like a hog', does not mean. "such an upbringing could only make a dirty fellow of the boy", or the like, but "I bring him up with great care". Thus when we read Mbh 12, 263, 10 *yajñāt prajā prabhavati nabhaso 'mbha ivāmalam*, these words are not perfectly clear at first sight The connection between the water from the clouds and the offspring is explained by the next verse *agnau prāstākutir brahmann ādityam upagacchati | ādityāj jāyate vṛṣṭir vṛster annam tatah prajāh*.

§ 21 In Mārķ. Pur. 29, 14 (and other instances) the simile may be said to bring a thing or an event in the very sphere of the speaker or of another person *a man must nourish the gods darily, like his own body*. A simile may bring a thing nearer to us RV. 1, 144, 7 *Agni ... delightful in appearance like a dwelling that is rich in food*, 191, 14 *... have taken asunder thy venom just like female jar-bearers*; 1, 3, 8·25, 1, 30, 1, 37, 2, 57, 4, 103, 6, 104, 5, 3, 45, 3. Here the upamānas are borrowed from every day life. In the same way, but somewhat extended: 1, 32, 5, 116, 15.

This sort of simile may illustrate a fact or an event by means of a comparison to human circumstances: 2, 6, 7 *Agni, thou goeth between both races* (viz. of gods and men) *... as a messenger like a bridegroom's friend* (who is matrimonial agent); see also, e.g., 1, 83, 2d; 85, 5. AV. 3, 11, 8 *old age has curbed you, as if it were a cow, an ox, with a rope*; the bridling of an ox or a cow formerly has impressed the author and called forth definite emotions in him; now a similar emotion is called forth by seeing or thinking of a curbed person, and thus the curbed one and the cow and ox are combined in a 'simile'².

§ 22. When the Jester, Bhāsa, Cār. 1, 28+ (pr.) remarks that there is no oil in the lantern, *just as there is no affection in a courtisan*³, he undoubtedly alludes to Cārudatta's affection for

¹ The remarks of F. Boas, Primitive Art, pp. 325ff should be read too. I refer also to the examples given by C. MEINHOF, o.c., pp. 67f., 135ff.

² See also KARL GROOS, Das Seelenleben des Kindes, 1913, p. 98. Cp. § 54.

³ As to the double meaning of *nissinehā* see § 60.

the courtisan Vasantasenā, the point upon which the play hinges. Thus, as we all know, we may make allusions with a simile "Wortspiel und Vergleich können mit einander verbunden werden ... anspielend auf die durch Kummer bewirkte Abmagerung der Königin Eulaha *there is not so thin a Queen in the Cards*"¹. Puns on the double meaning of the upameya are to the taste of the general public neth *zo vet als modder* (vet = 1 "fat", 2 "tipsy"); *die thee is zo slap als een vaatdoek* (slap = 1 "weak, slack, limp", 2 "wishy-washy")². See e.g. Mrcch 2, 1, *shampooer nava-bandhanamukkāe va gaddahīe hā tādido mhr gaddahīe*, 8, 46 the same person as a bhikṣu .. *pattā | ede vithinnapattā manne pattā va phulanti*, "the leaves tremble .. like wings ... with spread feathers"³.

With a simile we may imply veiled hints and remarks; Kāl Māl 3, 22 + (Vid, pr), where the return of Agnimitra's wife is compared to that of the planet Mars to the zodiacal sign: both are unfavourable

§ 23. Many a time colloquial speech has a special liking for similes, because they may have a comic character. As we have stated above, similes are often "affektisch" or "anschaulich" and then they may be in use as vigorous locutions. neth. *hij is zo arm als de mieren* ("as poor as the ants", i.e. "as poor as a church-mouse"), *zo kaal als een luis* ("as naked as a louse") But sometimes we find variations upon this sort of similes, which are witty or comic either because the upamāna is an idea that makes a comic impression or is ludicrous in itself, or because the connection of upamāna and upameya is a laughter-moving one. Cp. e.g. neth. *voortkomen als een luis op een teerton* ("to proceed like a louse on a tar-barrel"). Now and then this comic effect is emulated for its own sake: neth. *hij gleed uit als een slak op een kale kop* ("he slid along like a snail on a bald head"). Witty persons and authors, especially authors of comedies⁴ are wont to take advantage of laughter-moving and caricaturistic similes: neth.

¹ See E. ECKHARDT, Die lustige Person im alteren englischen Drama, Palaestra 17, 1902, p. 245.

² More examples FRED. BERENS, Taal en Letteren 9, p. 223. But see further on, § 60.

³ See J. PH. VOGEL, Het leemen wagentje, Diss. Amsterdam 1897, p. 207.

⁴ See e.g. ECKHARDT, o.c., pp. 244f.; 349.

Symen ik verlief op jou as een boer op een boeckweyte koek (Bredero) ("S. I am in love with you like a peasant with a buckwheat-cake"), *zijn volzinnen ryden voort als 'n kinderwagentje* (Van Deyssel¹) ("his sentences ride along like a baby-cart") In many cases the source from which the poet borrows was undoubtedly colloquial speech. In the same way the Jester² says, Bhāsa, Cār 3, 9 + (pr.) *I can sleep no more than a Buddhist who has made a date with a servant girl* As we may expect, similes of this sort often leave the mouth of the jester, who in his comparisons too utters himself in a hyperconcrete and realistic manner³ Bhāsa, Yaug. 3, 0 (pr.) *like an old hog's bladder I am bringing up nothing but wind*, *ibid* (he) *comes running hither like a foaming stream of dirty rain-water in the road*, Avim. 2, 8 + two similes (pr.); cp. 4, 21, 22, Cār 3, 2 + Often his jokes recall to mind his favourite occupation eating, cp Bhāsa, Cār. 1, 0 (pr.), see the whole passus, Vās. 4, 0 (pr.), cp Avim 2, 8 + (pr.), Mṛcch 4, 28 + (pr. vid.) etc. etc

In a hyperbolical simile⁴ the emotional value ('Gefühlswert') sometimes domineers to such a degree that logically the result is nonsense, for instance in emphatic utterances, invectives and the like *neth. hij is zo gierig als de pest* ("he is as stingy as pestilence"), *je bent zo lui als de bliksem* ("you are as lazy as lightning"). In general, such expressions which are 'meaningless' in themselves, have been built upon well-known patterns. Comic nonsense arises also, when the upamāna is faulty or wrong Thus, in the Mṛcchakaṭikā Samsthānaka betrays his ignorance by errors in the field of mythology 1, 25 *I will catch you just like Hanumān caught Subhadrā, the sister of Viṣṇu*, 1, 21 Kuntī caught by Rāvaṇa; 1, 39 etc., 1, 12, here in the whole passus the poet is aiming at effects.

A sudden transition from the sublime to every day events or to reality may cause a comic effect Bhāsa, Pr. 1, 2 the sūtradhāra glorifies "this autumn season, when the swan takes her

¹ Quoted by W. KRAMER, *De vergelyking*, in *De nieuwe Taalgids*, 24, pp. 273ff

² For the vidūṣaka and his speech HILLEBRANDT, *Kalidasa*, 1921, pp 120 ff.; J. HUIZINGA, *De vidūṣaka in het Indisch tooneel*, Diss. Groningen 1897, pp. 134ff.

³ Cp. e.g. the example given by MAMMATA, Kp 7, 309.

⁴ Exaggeration to raise a laugh, BERENS, o.c., p. 221.

delight on the banks of sand" — then interrupted by the 'voice behind the scene' he goes on. *bustling with joy as in the royal palace — a portress*. Just as in this verse, also Kāl Māl 1. 3 and Harṣa, Nāg. 1, 4 in such a transition the upamāna stands at the end, a fact which enhances the effect. Context and wordorder may emphasize what is characteristic in a simile. Kāl Māl 4, 15+ a maid-servant *here is, like a bull in a market-street, the revered Gautama, gone to sleep*, notice the contrast between the words *bull* and *āryagautama* which immediately follow each other!

§ 24. As I have already stated elsewhere¹, more than once 'sound-figures' are found in similes in English about 25 % of the sayings such as *as dry as dust*, *as dead as a door-nail* are alliterative, in Neth *compare zo groen als gras* (*as green as grass*), *zo klaar als een klontje*, ("as clear as a lump of sugar"), *zo vry als een vogel*, *zo week als was* etc

In other sayings rhyme (homoioteuton) is found: neth. *zo rood als een kroot* ("as red as a beetroot"), *zo nat als een kat* ("as wet as a cat"). Now, these agreements in sound are not poetical in themselves² In the doggerel of children we often hear rhyme etc., sometimes in the outward appearance of similes: *ik ben zo groot als een boot* ("I am as big as a boat") Very often these 'similes' are devoid of sense and prove nonsensical, when we try to find a logical meaning in them. They are unnecessary complements of a communication in the form of a simile, owing their existence in the first place to a want of and a special liking for assonance and parallelism³ Moreover, it may occur that the speaker likes to linger a moment with the idea or image he calls forth, then the simile may have a retarding and intensifying effect. This kind of sayings are apt to become formulae, mannerisms.

In ancient German popular songs the expressions *wie der morgenstern*, *wie ein stern* etc. are in the verse often meant to rhyme with the word *gern*¹. In medieval German literature we

¹ J. GONDA, Reim und Alliteration im . Atharva-Veda, Acta Orientalia, vol. 18.

² C. MEINHOF, o.c., p. 148 wrongly says: "...poetische Form .. z. B. reimt man".

³ See my Stilistische Studie .., pp. 20ff.

find proper names, 'formelhaft verwendet', in Gleichnis-Reim', e.g. *diu vil saelege kunign | was geheizen Ottegebe | ein wol berendiū wīnrebe*, "besonders im mittelhochdeutschen Reimvers, wo oft der Reim sie hervortreibt"². Indeed, a 'simile' containing a proper name may render many a service to rhyme neth *ick ken schermen alsoo wel as Pieter Brack | ick ken behendich en fray speelen uyt den aes-sack*³, elsewhere *Napoleon* has been introduced to rhyme with the 'simile' *smelt als sneeuw voor de zon*⁴. We must not forget that 'similes' of this sort which from a logical point of view are usually superfluous in the long-winded speech and recitation of simple and 'primitive' men have to perform a function.

In the Atharvaveda we find alliteration⁵ 6, 42, 1d, 2b *sakḥāyāv iva sacāvahan*, 80, 2b *divi devā iva śrītāh*, 7, 95, 2c *kurkurāv iva kūjantau*. 18, 3, 67 b = RV 7, 32, 26 b (see also Ved. Conc. 583) *pitā putrebhyo yathā*, Mbh. 7, 2, 3 *piteva p*⁶, an enlargement by means of another *p*— . AV. 11, 4, 10 b *pitā putram iva priyam*, 12, 1, 45 let the earth yield me ... streams of property *dhruveva dhenur* . ; 19, 49, 6 *rātri rājeṣṭā*, 10, 1, 1 I ... *vahatau vadhūm iva | vīśvarūpam*; see also 8, 7, 15a; 14, 1, 43. RV. 10, 149, 4 *vāśreva vatsam sumanā dukhānā*, 1, 38, 8 *vāśreva vidyun mimātri*. These cases are not artificial. The alliteration may be either in the upamāna and in the upameya or in one part of the entire expression. With all. and rhyme RV. 1, 4, 1 *surūpakṛtnam ūtaye sudughām iva goduḥe*.

Also in post-vedic texts: Mbh. 1, 6, 12 *krosantīm kurarīm iva*, also elsewhere, e.g. 11, 12, 10, 16, 18, Rām. 4, 19, 28, *patanga iva pāvakam* Mbh. 9, 3, 27, Rām. 3, 28, 14 (fixed formulas). See also Mbh. 7, 5, 8, 10, 23; 51; 15, 25. Often in the Rām.: 4, 17, 23 *pāpaṃ pracchannam iva pāvakam*; 22, 9: 4 × *p*—; 19, 22 *vajrānām iva vāsavam*; 31, 30 *pañcāsya iva pannagaḥ*; 32, 21

¹ A. DAUR, Das alte deutsche Volkshed, Leipzig 1908, p. 118.

² H. PONGS, Das Bild in der Dichtung, Marburg 1927, p. 172.

³ BREDERO, see P. H. VAN MOERKERKEN, Het Nederlandsch Kluchtspel in de 17e eeuw, I, p. 31.

⁴ WOUTERS and MOORMAN, Het Straathed, Nieuwe bundel, Amsterdam 1934, p. 143. Similes for the sake of rhyme also e.g. pp. 125; 138; 143.

⁵ See my Stilistische Studie, pp. 84ff.

⁶ Also Rām. 4, 22, 9, etc.; see also J. J. MEYER, Trilogie, III, p. 176.

bhartur bhāryeva tadvaśe, 45, 3, 48, 21; 54, 3, 67, 43. See also 4, 22, 17 *grahagrasta iva*, 24, 27, 26, 23. Not unfrequently in the works of Aśvaghoṣa. Bc. 7, 53 *rāgena sārḍham ripuneva yud-dhvā*, 8, 72 *vajradhvanīmeva vāranah*, 13, 5; 38, 47, Saund 6, 37 *śaśāṅkalekhā śaradabhramadhye*. Compare also. Kāl, Ragh see 1, 36; 2, 39. Rtus 1, 27, b, Mrcch 8, 15b. In a more artificial way e.g. Mrcch 1, 12, in a comic verse id 1, 52. — With homoioteleuton etc.: AthV. 10, 1, 25 *jānīhi kṛtye kartāram | duhīteva pitāram svam*, this sort of rhyme is frequent in these texts¹.

Rhyme e.g. Mbh. 7, 3, 13 . *samkruddhā vyāghrā iva mṛga-ksayam | pāṇḍavā ... kariṣyanti kuruksayam*; this sort of responsio is as old as the hills and not artificial in itself². In a *yathā* — *tathā*-simile with responsio id. 7, 5, 10², only *yathā* 7, 7, 6². Emphasizing assonances. Mbh. 5, 124, 22³.

Besides, we also find the interesting combination of simile and adnominatio⁴. AV. 19, 35, 2 *sa no rakṣatu jangiḍo dhanapālo dhaneva*⁵, Mbh. 7, 14, 30 *matto mattam iva dvīpam*. Here the adnominatio lies within the upamāna. Although found in a kāvya-poem, the line Bhār. Kīr. 3, 45 I roots in a very old type. *prāpto bhīmānavyasanād asahyaṃ dantīva dantavyasanād vikāram*; here we find responsio⁶ and the same word °*vyasana-* is found as well in the upameya as in the upamāna. It goes without saying that we should not treat alike all 'similes with adnominatio'. Mbh. 7, 26, 4 *sa nāga iva nāgena govṛṣeneva govṛṣah | samāhūtaḥ svayaṃ rājñā nāgāṇikam upādravat* we have an instance of polyptoton indicating reciprocity⁷. — In a kāvya-work: Aśv. S. 4, 39 *bhrāntaṃ mṛgaṃ bhrāntamukhī mṛgīva*. Kāl. R. 16, 40, Rtus. 3, 3 *sama-dāh pramadā iva*.

§ 25. Much more interesting, however, are the cases in which the adnominatio is distributed over upamāna and upameya. Here, in a number of cases this adnominatio is quite natural,

¹ See my Stil. Studie, pp. 92ff, Acta Or. vol. XVIII, o.c.

² See § 55.

³ See further on, § 25.

⁴ As for adnominatio, see my remark, Stilistische Studie (see above), p. 64, n. 3.

⁵ Compare the sort of adnominatio which I have called 'pleonastic a.', o.c., p. 69.

⁶ O.c., p. 34.

⁷ O.c., p. 68.

although, of course, the speaker or author wants to express something with it (Mbh) Sāvitrī 6, 23 *tvām hi jānāmi Sāvitrī Sāvitrīm iva tejasā* Bhāsa, Pr. 4, 10 we see an artificial and elaborated instance of this type, which in itself is in fact not artificial; after having heard the name of Raghu in strophe 9, Lakṣmana gives a welcome. *raghur iva ... bhava . . gunānām bhājanam*.

A rather frequent type consists in the combination of a simple noun with the same noun as part of a compound. Here in a translation we can often add the word *real*. Thus, Nala, 5, 7 the assembly of the kings is described: *rājasamitīm . . | sampūrnām puruṣavyāghrair vyāghrair giriguhām iva*, "filled with man-tigers (men like tigers) just like a mountain-cave with real tigers". See also e.g. Mbh 7, 26, 52 *śaradhārābhīr dhārābhīr iva toyadāh*, 1, 3, 186, cp 7, 14, 5 *aśmavarsam ivāvarṣat*. Aśv. Bc. 13, 63, S. 14, 29. Further e.g. Mbh 4, 14, 4 *tām drṣṭvā devagarbhābhām carantīm devatām iva*, 1, 3, 186; Daṇḍin, Dśkc. p. 46 (NS. ¹⁰), l. 3; 5.

Somewhat different is e.g. Mbh 5, 124, 22 *vipākānte dahaty enam kimpākam iva bhakṣitam* Cp. Aśv. S 6, 9 *vivarnavaktrā . . | vivarnacandрева* .. This type can easily be made a play, a trinket, an instrument of artificiality: Aśv. Bc. 8, 43 *gato nrdevah sa hi devī devavat*, 8, 75 *gunapriyo yena vane sa me priyah priyo 'pi sann apriyavat praceritah*, S 6, 26, where (°)padma(°) occurs six times!

Occasionally proper nouns play a part in the affair. Rām 4, 11, 26 *nanarda kampayan bhūmim dundubhīr dundubhīr yathā*. Aśv. Saund 2, 49 *tasya devī nṛdevasya māyā nāma tadābhavat | vitakrodhatamomāyā māyeva divī devatā*, "...a queen named Māyā, who like the goddess Māyā . ."¹, an accumulation of the same sounds and words as we often find in the works of Aśvaghoṣa and other kāvya-poets. See also 4, 6. Kāl Māl 3, 0 *mālaviāvi .. anuhūdāmutta va mālādīmāla*, "Mālavikā ... like a mālātī-garland . .", Mrcch 1, 6. In a song of praise of a king-bard (vairāḥika), which song is applied as an artificial expedient, we hear in a harinī-stanza with adnominatio . . *ananga vāṅgavān*, Kāl Māl. 5, 1

Repetition of the same word with a different meaning Aśv.

¹ Here JOHNSTON, The Saundarananda . . translated, Oxford 1932. p. 13 refers to BHĀMAHA, Kāvyaśālikā 1, 39, who objects to the use of Māyā in comparisons

Bc. 8, 24 *tatah sabāspā mahisī mahīpateh pranastāvatsā mahisiva vatsalā*, Saund 2, 19 *gām adharmaṇa nādhukṣat ksīratarṣena gām va* With rhyme. 6, 25.

§ 26. In addition to the cases of adnomina¹ quoted above, I point to a number of artificial instances. Bhāsa, Avim. 1, 5 + °bhīmamūrtir mūrtimān va pavano ..¹, Kāl Ragh. 3, 30 *tatāra vidyāh .. dīśo haridbhīr haritām veśvarah*; cp 5. 37 *dīpa va pradīpāt*. Not unfrequently in Dandin's Dśke, e.g p. 27, 10 (NS. ¹⁰) *aśmanah savidhe vidher ānanam va*, 11 .. *tāmraśāsanam śāsanam vidhātur va yam ādāya vidhiṃ tadupadiṣṭam diṣṭavi-jayam va*, quite unnatural², p. 44, 9 *drasṭukāmah kāma va*, p. 47, 7 *samtusṭāntarangā tarāṅgāvalim*. Artificial repetition of groups of syllables.

Now Aśv. S. 6, 33 we find a comparison which, at first sight, seems rather unusual. Sundarī's heart throbs with sighs like a cave, the opening of which has been split by the thunderbolt, but as appears from the Sanskrit text, here the author cares only about the repetition of sounds³: *sā sundarī śvāsacalodarī hi vayrāṅsambhinnādarī guheva*

Sometimes the words or the order of words seems to be chosen intentionally in such a way that two words, almost equal in sound, follow each other. Mbh. 12, 331, 32 .. *bhagnā nagā nāgair ivottamāih*; Rām. 4, 20, 3 *vānaram ... | tārā tarum ivonmūlam paryadevayatātūrā*

Artificial too is e.g. the simile combined with a śleṣa⁴.

§ 27. In my opinion there is occasion to raise the question, if there exists any connection between the place in the sentence occupied by the simile and its 'Affektgehalt' (emotionalism). Indeed, in sentences or utterances which are spoken under the influence of feelings and sensations, the most 'affektbetonte' element will push itself towards the first place in the sentence. Now, as I take it, in Netherlandish this is often the case with similes as well. When we read in the report of a meeting. *Als een briesende leeuw stond de heer X. op en schreeuwde: ik protesteer!* (like a

¹ See also § 12

² On the contrary, p. 29, 10 a simile is found without a yamaka, although here there is an abundance of examples of this figure.

³ Comic, in a Netherl. stage-play: BREDERO, Sp. Brab. 389.

⁴ See § 60.

roaring lion *Mr X. got up from his seat and shouted I protest!*), then, in my opinion, the incident is related more vividly and the feelings of those present are interpreted in a more apparent way than in a sentence in which the simile occupies a place near the end, the sentence *De heer X. stond op als een briesende leeuw* (*Mr. X got up like a roaring lion*) expresses less emotion. A Malay instance *seperti boeroeng ajahanda perdjnak | didalam doekoeng pelhara dan pénak*. It might be an interesting task to collect instances belonging to different languages.

Moreover, the place occupied by the simile with respect to the central point of the utterance or communication may differ and in this too may lie a difference with regard to the *Ausdruckswert*. Especially, when the distance between it and the *upameya* is rather great, a comparison opening the sentence may promote the tension. *O, es war ein himmlisch Ahnen, womit ich jetzt den kommenden Frühling wieder begrusste! Wie fernher in schweigender Luft, wenn alles schläft, das Saitenspiel der Geliebten, so umtönten seine leisen Melodien mir die Brust...*¹ Here the reader's patience is put to a severe test.

As for Vedic and Sanskrit texts, in a number of cases the simile occupies the first place in a sentence or in a verse², then it seems to me that usually a peculiar stylistic value may be recognized. The frequency varies in the various texts. In the *Atharvaveda* this position of the simile is not unfrequent. 5, 14, 10 I *putra iva pitaram gacha svaja ivābhīsthito daśa*, "as a son to a father go, like a constrictor trampled on bite", 7, 109, 4 II *vrkṣam ivāśanyā jahi yo..*, "like a tree with a thunderbolt, smite him who...", here the victim occupies the first place, compare 6, 37, 2 II *śaptāram atra no jahi divo vrkṣam ivāśanih*. Just as in this case, elsewhere in sentences containing an imperative. 4, 4, 6d *dhanur ivā tānayā pasah*, 19, 46, 2c *indra iva dasyūn ava dhūnusva prtanyatah*, the mighty name of Indra in the first place³, see also 28, 3d, 28, 4 II¹ *like the rising sun*, 14, 2, 31 II "like *Indrānī*..

¹ HOLDERLIN, *Hyperion*, see W. SCHNEIDER, *Ausdruckswerte der deutschen Sprache*, Leipzig-Berlin 1931, p. 181. W. KRAMER, *Inleiding tot de stilistiek*, Groningen 1935, p. 59 refers to Old Testament, *Jes* 55, 10.

² DANDIN, *Kāvya*. 2, 17 *viparyāśopamā*, "reversed simile".

³ See § 44.

mayest thou. ", but here the verb stands at the end of the line *Indrānīva subudhā budhyamānā jyotir agrā usasah prati jāgarāsi*, in the same way 32 II *like Sūryā . with your husband unite here*. AV 10, 1, 3 II, 2, 28, 1; 5, 4, 18, 2, 5, 26, 5, 6, 30, 3, 14, 2, 37 In a passus containing several very short sentences (which is very often a proof of emotion), with alliteration 10, 1, 17 *vāta iva vṛkṣān ni mṛṇīhi pādāya*, "like the wind the trees, crush down, bring to ruin ..", cp. RV. 2, 39, 5. In execrations and the like AV. 8, 4, 8 II *like water held together with the fist let (hṛm)*. *be non-existent*, 19, 50, 3 II variation upon a well-known image *gambhīram aplavā iva na tareyur arātayaḥ*, "like a deep water men without a boat may the niggards fail to pass (it)". 5, 20, 1d *like a lion, about to conquer thunder loudly against (them)*, 2a goes on with *like a lion has roared thunderously...*, cp also 21, 6b In the last verse of a hymn, 2, 30, 5 II (to secure the love of a woman) *hither has this woman come desiring a husband; desiring a wife I have come, like a loud-neighing horse... I have come*². In other sentences that do not contain an imperative 12, 1, 57 *aśva iva rajo dudhuve*, here the simile is an indication of vivid and vigorous speech. AV. 8, 6 is a 'hymn' to preserve a pregnant woman from demons: 8 *the demons who surprise her — them like a shadow the sun, circling, has made to vanish*; in my opinion the equivalence of demons and shadow has been emphasized by the position of *chāyām iva* at the beginning. Cp. 8, 7, 15. Sometimes, however, it seems to be difficult to see a greater emotional value in such a simile. AV. 14, 2, 44c, containing the simile, is perhaps attracted by b; 12, 3, 33 II, 9, 3, 24.

Now it is worthy of note that in this text many of the upamānas which stand at the beginning, are ideas that have a great 'Gefühlswert' (emotional value) in itself or are usually found in speech that is meant to be vigorous. In AV. the word *mātā* occurs 40 times, *māteva* or *mātā...* *yathā* 6 times, but this is always at the beginning of a verse or line, cp. 18, 2, 50 *mātā putram yathā*, 12, 3, 23 *janitrīva prati haryāsi sūnum*; lion and fire 8, 7, 15. I also refer to frequent lines such as *putram iva pitarāv aśvinobhā* RV. 10, 131, 5a etc. (Ved. Conc. 588); *aśvā iva sajīvarīḥ* RV. 10, 97, 3c etc.

¹ See WHITNEY-LANMAN, A.V. translated, p. 942.

² See also § 31. See also WHITNEY-LANMAN, o.c., p. 73.

The Rgveda yields a rather large number of instances. 1, 32, 6 *like a person who is not able to fight . he (Vrtra) has challenged the great hero (Indra)*: 117, 18 in an exclamation, 123, 10 *kanyeva tanvā śāsādānām eṣi devī devam ..*, “like a maid . thou goest, goddess (Uṣas)”, cp 130, 4 III, 1, 23, 11, 100, 3 Here the position of the upamānas points to briskness With a command or request 1, 63, 5d to Indra *ghaneva vajriṇ chnathakhy amitrān*, emphatically. Cp. 104, 9d *pteve nah śṛṇuḥ*, 140, 1. Query of a person who is interested R.V. 1, 165, 2; cp. 117, 12, desire 2, 33, 6. — In post-Vedic literature. Nala 10, 27 *doleva muhur āyāti yāti caiva sabhām prati*; 12, 24 *yūthabhraṣṭām ivarkām mām harinīm. . | na mānayaśi mām (2 × mām!)*; Sāv. 5, 5 *sūlaur iva śiro viddham idam samlakṣayāmy aham*, in direct oration too Mbh. 11, 16, 57. See also 7, 22, 15, 10, 8. Compare also 7, 25, 31. A longer and more elaborate upamāna Mbh. 11, 16, 43 (lamentation of the Kuru women over the slain) *raktopalavanānīva vibhānti . | mukhāni Keśava ||*. But usually we find in the Mbh. shorter and more natural upamānas denoting ‘affektbetonte’ notions in vivid and emotional speech 7, 10, 31 *āsiviṣa iva...*, “like a venomous serpent”...; 63 *utsanga iva samvrdham*; 15, 22 *as with their claws great tigers, as with their teeth great elephants*, see 7, 22, 4, 7, 1, 24; 12, 145, 5 *dāvāgnineva nirdagdhā... latā*; 177, 39 *pātāla iva*. I refer also to the type of sentence: 7, 15, 15 *tau vṛṣāv iva nardantau... viceratuh*; 21, 65, Sāv 1, 21 *sa vighrahavatiiva śrīr vyavardhata nṛpātmaṣā*, where only the demonstrative pronoun precedes, but its meaning is no other than our “and” or “then”. Cp. Manu 8, 173. With *yah sa* + simile Mbh. 7, 10, 7. See also Manu 8, 95 *like a blind man who swallows fish with the bones is the man who ..*, which is more vivid than: *the man who... is like a blind man. .* Rāmāyana: 4, 45, 3 the monkeys, in search of Sītā, as soon as they have heard the command: *like locusts they overspread the earth and set out*. When a lot of monkeys reach a cave, *like the going of the wind... their looks run off into the darkness* (50, 20), which sounds vivid, but also to take up the preceding words without any delay their eyesight and courage did not fail; in this way every thought of the contrary is excluded. When they reach the ocean, their hearts sank into their boots (64, 7) *ākāśam iva duṣpāram sāgaram prekṣya vānarāḥ*. Cp. 4, 61, 8.

§ 28. It might be an interesting task to trace this phenomenon

in other texts too. Here I have to confine my remarks to a number of post-Vālmikian works. In the plays of Aśvaghoṣa for instance: Avim. 1, 5 + *like an incarnation of the wind its swift movements*. . in a the description of a minister who has seen an elephant rushing at the princess' carriage, Cār. 1, 28 + pr., Vīd., in a menace Cār 1, 26 + pr (2 ×)¹ Artificially Abhiṣ. 2, 1 + (pr) Sitā: *how is it that to-day when the sacrificial fire is blazing like the sprinkling of water some comfort in my heart arises?*², cp, with a compound, 5, 9 + In verses. Yaug 1, 16 the minister swears that his name shall not be Y., if he will not liberate the king (after this vow the play is named) *if, seized by the enemy's troops as by Rāhu the moon, I do not liberate the king*, here the adjective °grasto, being most 'affektbetont', tries to occupy a place at the head of the sentence and drags the simile along with it, which now occupies pāda b, the simile, on the other hand, gives rise to the word °grasto. 2, 9 the king of Ujjain says, that this capture passes his belief. He cries out: *I do not believe the capture of U. which you relate — like the removing with the palm of your hand of the Mandara (mountain) — whose enemies report his heroism in battles* .. Here the main point of the emotional utterance ("I do n't believe") is at the beginning of the verse, the hyperbolic simile interrupts the 'regular' construction of the sentence, d is an addendum, notwithstanding the outward appearance of a vasantatilakā-strophe a reflection of quite natural speech These two texts may be sufficient to prove that also in Bhāsa's verses the simile may be more than a dead thing or a stencil acting only as an ornament on the contrary, the simile itself and its position too often are copied from the living language Thus, Avim. 3, 3 the effusion in the form of a simile of Avimāraka, disguised as a burglar, does not seem to stand at the beginning for the sake of the metrum or the like: after the exclamation. *how fearsome is the midnight!* he commences a śārdūlavikrīḍita-strophe as follows: *like embryos in the womb are unconscious all creatures in their sleep*. Such another case 4, 4a, cp. b, cp. Prat. 3, 2 gone into ecstasies over the speed of the chariot *drumā dhāvanti*... | *nadīva* etc.; Cār. 4, 3 II a disconcerted cry *mṛgīva*. . *kampase cānukampase*. Prat. 6, 1 is a singular vamsāstha-strophe. after some long

¹ See § 37.

compounds we find in d *mṛgīva sītā paribhūya nīyate*. Cp also Prat. 1, 21; Avim. 4, 12c.

As I stated above, a simile that precedes the upameya may evoke tension. Bhāsa, Car. 3, 9 + Vid. (pr.) it seems to enhance the comic effect: *like a Buddhist monk who has an assignation with a servant girl — I can not sleep*. Yaug. 2, 11 in a 'poetical' form the king answers the queen who had asked, why the king of the Vatsas is not an eligible son-in-law *like a fire... in a forest and burning the whole world.., the flames of my authority are extinguished at his boundary*. Learned Prat 5, 7 II. In the same way Kāl Urv. 2, 13 + Vid. (pr.) *as I when hungry get presents..., you have obtained.* . (comic), broadly elaborated Śak. 3, 23, when the king wishes to kiss Śakuntalā *aparikṣatakomalasya tāvat kusumasyeva navasya satpadena | adharasya pīpāsātā mayā te sadayam sundarī grhyate raso 'yam*; art, but in the favourable sense of the word Emotionally Kāl. Śak 6, 27 + (pr), cry of distress (Vid.) *like a mouse seized by a cat — I have become hopeless of life*, cp. also 6, 23 + (pr, porter) Admiring Urv. 2, 9 + (pr) Nandana-garden. Admiring, in an inquiry Śak 7, 8 +, with long compounds. Kāl. Urv. 2, 0, maid, being commanded by her mistress, searching for the Vidūṣaka (pr): *like a monkey drawn in a picture..., silent, here stands the venerable M (= the Vid.)*, rooting in a predilection of the common people for rather emotional speech? — See also Aśv. Bc 5, 79 *iti suhrdam ivānuśiṣya..*; 8, 83 (2 ×). — Ratnāv. 3, 18 + (Vid. pr., choice of words!). Bhav. Uttar. 2, 24 a quite natural order of words

§ 29. Sometimes it seems to me that the author who puts a simile at the first place wishes to suggest or to make his readers guess the things he wants to say; the image is, as it were, a prelude. Aśv. Saund. 2, 30 the excellent king *like with water a cloud, with good conduct he gladdened the people*, 4, 2 *he, as with a she-sheldrake the sheldrake..*, the name of the cakravāka speaks volumes. In the same way 13, 1 *pariṣikto 'mṛteneva yuyuje parayā mudā*. Cp. also 2, 32 II. More elaborately Aśv. Bc. 8, 71 *tatas... yaśodharāṃ preksya... | mahāravindair iva vrstātāditair mukhaiḥ sabāṣpair vanitā vicukruśuḥ*. Saund. 14, 41c, here the place of the upamāna for the upameya has perhaps been brought about by a tendency to variation. in some foregoing verses *iva* occurs in d. With a learned simile and repetition of the same words, artifi-

cially but engaging the readers' attention equally strongly Kāl R. 1, 1 *like words and their meanings united, for the understanding of words and their meanings, I salute the parents of the universe, Pārvatī and Parameśvara*, where the first words belong to the last, see also Kum. 6, 79. Other instances: Mrcch 1, 11 + (pr.); Bhār. Kīr. 6, 2, Dand. Dśkc. NS¹⁰, p. 24, l. 1; Bhav Uttar 3, 5; with a long digression¹ 4, 15

§ 30. The Indian authors on the subject were well acquainted with the fact that a simile is very often employed in praising a person or a thing. See for instance Vāmana², who says "a simile is employed in praising, reviling (reproaching) and describing the real state of things". Now the simile may be used in this way, as we have stated above³, as in the example quoted by Vāmana *an affectionate wife is like nectar*, but we moreover find it in communications and utterances that are complete in themselves, as an intensifying addition. As a rule this simile is undeniably exaggerating or hyperbolic⁴. In colloquial speech this kind of similes is found too *neth. o, dat park is zo mooi, net een sprookje* ("the park is awfully fine, just like a fairy-tale"). It is obvious that this use of the simile too is peculiar to sensibility, excitement and the like. The evident exaggeration which is peculiar to it (but not only to it!) is a typical phenomenon of the speech of the common people illogical and not to be understood literally it may serve to give expression to feelings and sensations.

In a certain sense sentences like the following may be counted among its number: Mbh. 7, 22, 12 *nante jātu punar yuddham iheyur iti me matih | yathā tu bhagnā droṇena vāteneva mahādru-māh*. Perhaps in many cases this type is at the root of the well-known constructions such as Nala 5, 6 *sukeśāntāni cārūni | mukhāni rājñāṃ śobhante*, id. 1, 12, here the following words *nakṣatrāṇi yathā divi* may be understood as having been originally an addition⁵. Genuine, though slightly less spontaneous examples are Nala 1, 11 *tām. . | ...śatam sakṣīnām... paryupāsac Chacīm iva*; 5, 5 *tatra sma pīnā drśyante bāhavaḥ parighopamāh |*

¹ See § 53

² VĀMANA, Kāvyaśāstrakārasūtravṛtti, 4, 2, 7.

³ See §§ 9 ff

⁴ See also § 10

⁵ CALAND, in his romanised edition of the Nalopakhyaṇa (Utrecht, 1916) puts a comma before *yathā*

*ākāravantaḥ suślakṣṇāḥ pañcaśīrṣā ivoragāḥ*¹, here in b *par* is a hyperbolic addition to *pīnā* in a, d is an exaggerating enlargement of the whole communication. Mbh 4, 16, 11 *sa papāta tadā bhūmau.. | vighūrṇamāno nīśceṣṭaś cchinnamūla vva drumah* See also Nala 1, 2; 20, 1 In the Ath. V. 6, 87, 2 I *be just here, be not moved away, like a mountain not unsteady.*

§ 31 Now, more than once such an 'addition' may be serviceable in forming a climax We find such a climax also in every day speech The other day I myself to stimulate a person said *vooruit, gauw, als de bliksem* ("hurry up, off you go, like lightning") In the Atharvaveda several instances are met with. 4, 12, 6 *sa uttiṣṭha preṇi pra drava rathah sucakraḥ supariḥ sunābhīḥ*, "do you here get up, go forth, run forth (like) a chariot well-wheeled, well-tyred, well-naved"², 8, 6, 17 III *padā pra vidhya pārṣṇyā / sthālīm gaur vva spandanā*. 8, 8, 3a *crush them .. b devour them... c let them be broken like hemp*, in this verse also adnom and allit. 6, 67, 2, 19, 28, 2 Without an imperative 6, 21, 2 *you are the most excellent of remedies, the best of plants, like Soma. , like Varuna* A very fine instance is 6, 115, a hymn for the relief of *enas*, "sin" 1 *if .. we have committed sins, free us from that...*, 2 *if I have committed sin, let . (it) free from that, drupadād iva*, "as from a post", 3 *being freed as if from a post, as one..., like.. , let all cleanse me of sin*³, in 3a *drupadād vva muc-* (2d) has been taken up, although this figure may be 'besonders kunstlich' elsewhere⁴, this is not necessary See also AV. 10, 1, 1-3. — With rhyme RV. 1, 128, 1 *viśvaśruṣṭiḥ sakhīyate rayir vva śravasyate*.

Instances from the Rāmāyana: 4, 31, 13 Sugrīva delays and Lakṣmana gets angry .. *krodhāgninā vrtah | Prabhañjana vāpṛitah prayayau* L., 19 his wrath increases. *babhūva dvigunam kruddho bahvindhana vānalah*, 29 it comes to a burning-point *sa dīrghoṣṇamahocchvāsah kopasamraktalocanah | babhūva naraśārdūlah sadhūma vva pāvakah | bānasalyasphurañjihvah sāyakāsanabhoga-vān | svatejovīṣasambhūtah pañcāsya iva pannagah*, and as if smoking fire and the venomous fury of a five-headed serpent do

¹ See above, §§ 9f.

² Here the Paipp-text is very different

³ For particulars see also WHITNEY-LANMAN, o.c., p. 365

⁴ See HOFMANN, in STOLZ-SCHMALZ, Lateinische Grammatik⁵, 1928, p. 830, my Stil. Studie, pp 52 f

not suffice to describe L.'s fury, there follows *taṃ dīptam va kālāgnīm nāgendram va kopitam*

In a śārdūlav -stanza Bhāsa, Yaug. 4, 12a *depressed by . b defeated . .and devoid of... c ignorant of . and overcome by .. d with his face down-cast with shame like a wrestler ..*

§ 32. Here I observe that it seems to be an outcome of the so-called rule of the 'wachsende Glieder', when in sentences containing descriptions after some adjectives or compounds a simile occupies the last place. It seems to be a fact in Sanskrit too, that in a sentence, when equivalent parts are connected, the longer and more massive parts like to follow the shorter and lighter members. See e.g. Nala 11, 3 II *hā hatāsmi, vinastāsmi, bhītāsmi vijane vane*; 12, 9 II *mahīśāṃś ca varāhāṃś ca rksāṃś ca vanapannagān*, Mbh 12, 266, 21 I *pitā dharmah, pitā svargah, pitā hi paramam tapah*; Mārķ Pur. 16, 65 *dhanyāsmi, anugrhitāsmi, devaś cāpy avalokitā*, etc.¹ — With a simile an interesting example, for the greater part borrowed from every day speech, is Bhāsa, Cār. 1, 8 pr. (vasantatilakā-stanza).

§ 33. It has struck me that in the Atharvaveda more than once one or more similes are found in the last verse of a hymn. See 3, 18, 6. in a longer line two similes: *mām anu pra te mano vatsam gaur iva dhāvatu pathā vār iva dhāvatu*²; 3, 11, 8: 30, 6-7, 6, 22, 3, 7, 115, 4, 13, 2, 46 (= RV. 5, 1, 1)³, 19, 33, 5. An expressive winding-up beginning with a *yathā*-sentence, in which the mighty sun is introduced as a parallel⁴, and ending with a *iva*-simile, in which the elephant⁵ is the upamāna. 10, 1, 32.

For Vedic prose, compare e.g. Ait. Br. 8, 20, 7, a *yathā* — *evam*-simile in a long parallelism. *tad yathavādah priyah putrah pitaram priyā vā jāyā patim sukham śivam upasprśaty ā visrasa, evaṃ haivaitenaindrena mahābhīṣekeṇābhīśiktasya kṣatṛiyasya surā vā somo vānyad vānnādyam s.s.u.ā.v*, 8, 11, 8⁶ just as ... barbarians or waylayers . . seizing a rich man in the wilderness, then throw him in a pit, rob his property and run away . . ; both times, the long simile is found at the end of an argumentation, the latter at

¹ I intend to write a paper on this subject.

² Epiphora, see my Stil Studie, p. 35.

³ See also WHITNEY-LANMAN, o.c., p. 727.

⁴ See also § 43.

⁵ See §§ 39ff.

⁶ See also § 49.

the end of the description of the Punarabhiseka, the former at the conclusion of the Mahābhiseka.

With *iva* 7, 31, 5 in dominion, in himself, he places the dominion of the trees, *nyagrodha vāvarodhair bhūmyām*, "as the nyagrodha with its descending shoots in the earth", *he is established in sovereignty*. See also Jaim. Br.¹ no 34, at the end *sa yathākramaṇād ākramaṇam ākramyodanyāt, tādrk tat*, no 88 at the end *yathā ha girau jyotir bhāyād, evam . bhāti ... ya evaṃ veda*, "as on a mountain a light shines, in this way shines to him ... who knows thus"; 179 end. Cp. also ChU 5, 24, 5; BĀU. 2, 1, 20

In the Mahābhārata a simile occurs at the conclusion of an adhyāya in a rather limited number of cases 4, 14, 20, 15, 21 (śloka), 7, 5, 21, 16, 54; 21, 65 (śloka), 26, 68, 118, 18, 146, 144, 160, 60, 163, 68, 8, 10, 56 (śloka), 14, 39 (śloka), 19, 58, 20, 51, 23, 22 (śloka), unless marked, long meter Instances. 8, 14, 39 *tataḥ samāgamo ghoṛo babhūva sahasā tayoh | yathā devāsūre yuddhe vṛtravāsavayor va*², 8, 25, 42 *vīrarāja tadā pārtho vidhūmo 'gnir iva jvalan*; a more artificial instance, however, is 7, 146, 144 *sa devasātrūn iva devarājāḥ | kirīṭamālī vyadhamat samantāt | yathā tamāṃsy abhyuditas tamoghnah | pūrvapratijñāṃ samavāpya vīrah*.

In the poems of Aśvaghoṣa one or more similes at the end of a canto are found several times one simile Bc 1, 94; 4, 103, S. 2, 65, 10, 64, see also 18, 64 Bc. 1, 94 concludes the 'birth of Buddha' *Thus by . . the birth of a son to the king, that city known as Kapila was delighted as was the city of the god of wealth full of apsaras at the time of the birth of Nalakūvara*, S 18, 64 the poet adds an image to his concluding words "let the reader understand this and study it .." *as only the residue of gold is taken ..*

§ 34. But we find similes not only at the end of an argumentation or at the conclusion of a part of a text, they may also be met with at culminating points in the story or argument. As will be stated further on³, here even two or more similes are often found together. Jaim. Br., no 140· Indra had perpetrated several

¹ Ed. W. CALAND, Das Jaiminīya-Brāhmaṇa in Auswahl, Akad v Wet., Amsterdam, 1919.

² For *yathā ... va*, see § 58.

³ See §§ 35ff.

crimes, the gods refused to sacrifice for him, and so the sin remained with him, at length Agni performed a sacrifice for him, "now he (Agni) burnt out at once the whole sin of Indra", and here two similes are added: *sa yathāhir ahicchavyar nirmucyeta, yathā muñjād isikām vivrhet evam eva sarvasmāt pāpmano nira-mucyata*. Ait Br 8, 25, 1 (dealing with the office of a house-priest) in a somewhat emotional passage¹.

When we peruse the unperishable story of Nala, we meet with similes in those verses, where important persons or events are described 1, 2, 15; 2, 28; 29 Nala, 1, 11, 12, 13, 3, 13 Damayantī², 5, 3, 5, 6² the kings arriving for the svayamvara, 5, 43, 44² the first connubial bliss; 10, 27 when Nala, intending to run away from D., is in two minds, 11, 20, 12, 24, 103, D.'s wailing, 11, 36, 39 her meeting with the hunter, who wants to violate her, 13, 47, 16, 9 etc. D.'s pitiable condition, 17, 6, 9, 11 the freckle or birth-mark, by which D. is recognized, 20, 1, 21, 4, 7; 8; 35 N.'s journey for the second svayamvara and his arrival; 24, 52; 53 D.'s joy after the reunion etc. Of course, not every instance is equally clear, but the drift is, in my opinion, clear enough. The same holds good even in a text like the Märk. Pur.; here too, when important events of a story are related we find more than once an effusion, and also a simile. 10, 77; 21, 7, 82, 51, 87, 17, 89, 7. At a pause or at the end of a subdivision e.g. 11, 21, were it is explained how living beings are born etc. ... "and again the human being dies and is born again. Hence he perambulates this mundane existence, like the jar and the rope (at a well)" *ghaṭṭyantravat*; here the mind of speaker and hearers lingers a moment³ Reviving of what has been said 11, 31

§ 35. HIRZEL already said, that "bei seiner Behandlung der Bilder ein hervorragendes Merkmal der vedischen Kunstsprache notwendig verloren ging: ihre Haufung in demselben Lied, sogar im selben Verse"⁴. Indeed, it is a pity that he did not study this 'Haufung'. It is really an important and interesting phenomenon, with which everyone who has read Sanskrit poetry attentively

¹ For the Upanisads see H. OLDENBERG, Die Lehre der Upanishaden usw², 1923, p. 157f.

² See further on, § 37.

³ See further on, § 54.

⁴ HIRZEL, o.c., p. 2.

must be acquainted To those who might contend that accumulation of images in a small compass is without any doubt artificial, I would answer that this accumulation is essentially a sort or a figure of repetition. A figure which is repeated often has the nature of an emotional utterance. If the conditions giving rise to the use of a simile are present with an extraordinary intensity or during a greater length of time, they will probably produce two or more similes. In the case of an explaining or illustrating simile¹ this is clear enough if there is occasion for us to have recourse to a simile through want of understanding of our partner, it is evident that we will add another simile, if we wish to attain our end and this not-understanding happens to last. In this way we try to approach the idea we wish to explain This trying is at the root of such varied repetitions as are well-known to the readers of the Upanisads, see e.g. BĀU. 4, 3, 18 f., ChU. 6, 1, 4-6, see also BĀU 1, 4, 7, — Märk. Pur. 27, 22-26, Áśv. S. 11, 24 ff. etc

In the case of an 'emotional simile' the strong emotion causes repetition when the 'emotional (affektisch) figure' has been used once, the emotion is not yet appeased. In this way we meet with such a repetition in effusions, in lyric texts etc.² The repetition of the figure of the simile in order to paraphrase and to define an abstract notion as clearly as possible or to explain an idea for which we are not able to find the exact word or words (or for which we do not care to use them), to explain a vague and indistinct, but strong feeling, are among the cases called by LANDOR 'prismatic diction' Here we use again and again new delineating qualifications which constantly cast a new variegation or elucidation of feelings on the object we have in mind It goes without saying that this way to express ourselves may develop into a device, into mannerism, that it may be used consciously and by design. Authors possessing a vivid imagination and those that have a strong sense of decorative descriptions make good use of this accumulation. Then it becomes an artifice or an ornament.

¹ See §§ 49ff.

² In a Melanesian 'song' e.g. the body is described with a long series of comparisons: THURNWALD, *Forschungen auf den Salomoinseln*, I (1912), p. 134, see also p. 178 *dem Gelbstaar glerch ist deme Haut / wie des . Hundes / vom Schweine hast du 's, dasz du scheckig bist.*

Here follow some examples. The other day, I heard a boy say to someone wearing a fine new hat, but the rest of whose dress and outward appearance was not in keeping with it *dat lykt wel een vlag op 'n modderschuit, nou zeg, net een aap met 'n garibaldi'* ("it suits him as a saddle suits a sow, say he looks like a monkey in a slouch-hat") Or, wife to husband who is walking about in a heat *doe toek niet zo als een bezetene! je lykt wel gek!* ("don't behave like a fool! You're not dotty, are yer?"). In a literary work. Van Deyssel, Porcelain, Kr 235 vlg.¹ *waar je lykt op een poes op een kathedraal, op een haas op een vogelant-imperiaal, op een muis die boven op een hoogen hoed zou zitten* ("where you look like a cat in a pulpit, or a hare on a cab-imperial, or a mouse on a top-hat"). For other languages² "Statt nur eines Bildes zieht der [altfranzösische] Dichter auch wohl noch ein zweites und drittes herbei um anschaulich zu werden (Doppelvergleiche)"³, sometimes very concisely *car plus sont fier que lyon ne serpent*. "Die Dichter lieben es, mehrere Vergleiche an einander zu reihen. Namentlich begegnet dies bei der Beschreibung von Personen, Tieren oder Gegenständen aber auch sonst"³ "Sehr belebt wird die Sprache [in der Volksepik der Grossrussen] durch die vielen Vergleiche. Bei diesen tritt nicht selten ein dreifacher Parallelismus der Glieder ein, so z. B. Dobrynja bleibt zwölf Jahre weg, da heisst es *Ein Tag nach dem andern fliesst dahin wie Regen, | eine Woche nach dem andern kommt heran, wie wenn das Gras wächst, | aber ein Jahr läuft vorbei nach dem andern, wie ein sturzender Strom*"⁴. From Westphalia *Ich wünsch ihm all das Beste, | so viel der Baum hat Aste. | I.w.i.s.v. Glücke fein, | s.v. wie Stern' am Himmel sein |* etc.⁵ In Babylonian spells . . *ich habe dich lieb . wie . die Schafmutter ihre Lammchen, die Gazelle ihr Junges, die Eselin ihr Fullen*⁶.

¹ See W. KRAMER, *Inleiding tot de stilistiek*, Groningen 1935, p. 127. The whole chapter (7, Diaphaan-prismatisch) is worth reading.

² I refer also to R. HEINZEL, *Über den Stil der altgermanischen Poesie* (1875), p. 16.

³ KARL MEINHOFF, *Die Vergleiche in den altfranzösischen Karlsepen*, Diss. Marburg 1886, p. 59.

⁴ W. WOLLNER, *Untersuchungen über die Volksepik der Grossrussen*, Diss. Leipzig 1879, p. 12. See also O. BOCKEL, *Psychologie der Volksdichtung*, Leipzig 1906, p. 296.

⁵ BOCKEL, *o.c.*, p. 296.

⁶ M. JASTROW, *Die Religion Bab. und Assyriens*, I, pp. 317ff., whose view, however, is not right ('poetry').

As for ancient Indian literature¹ I refer to the following instances AV. 8, 5, 11 *bc you are the best of herbs, like the ox of moving creatures, like the tiger of wild beasts*, here the abstract 'best of' is made more intelligible by means of two concrete examples. 3, 29, 6 at the end of this group of mantras (7-8 do not belong to it) that has to accompany the offering of a sheep with white legs we find three or four similes to explain and to make clear the abstract idea "the sheep is not exhausted" *ireva nopa dasyati*, "like refreshing drink it is not exhausted", *like the ocean, a great draught, like the two . gods*, the comparison with the two gods is not very clear². See also 6, 12, 1, 7, 45, 2; 95, 1-2 The sūkta 6, 115 is a fine instance of a somewhat different type, where the second simile is clearly an enlargement 1 *if we have committed sins . free us from that*, 2 *if etc., let . free from that, as from a post*, 3 *being freed as if from a post, as one that has sweated , like sacrificial butter — let all cleanse me of sin* See also 19, 28, 1 ff., a beautiful climax, to an amulet of darbha 1d = 2a *burner . .*, 2II *do you ... burn like heat against all the ...*, 3a *burning like heat . .*, 3II *split (them) like Indra breaking apart* *Vala*, 4 *split . .*, II *make their heads fly apart, as the rising sun does the skin of the earth*. See also 5, 20, 1-2, 4, 4, 6-7. — Not quite on a par with these instances are texts such as 8, 7, 15 *siṃhasyeva stanathoh sam vijante 'gner va vijante . .*, "as at the roaring of a lion they shrink with fear, as at fire they tremble ...", here two verbs occur, and the whole line is an instance of a sort of varied repetition³. See also 3, 14, 4-5; 6, 87, 2 I⁴.

§ 36. Such an accumulation of similes occurs more than once with imperatives in verses accompanying a magical rite. AV 6, 37 is a sūkta against curses. 2 *avoid us, o curse, as a burning fire a lake, smite our curser as the thunderbolt from the sky a tree*. A great number of comparisons we find in 5, 14, especially at the end; this sūkta, which prevents witchcraft with a plant, is 'written' in a very emotional speech. adnominatio (1c, 5b), repetition of pādas (1d-2b), anaphora (7I) etc, now in 10 we read: *go like a son to a father; like a constructor ... bite*, 11 ... *like*

¹ Cp. DANDIN, Kāvya. 2, 40 *bahūpamā*, "multiplex simile"

² See also WHITNEY-LANMAN, o.c., p. 137.

³ See my Stilistische Studie, pp. 35ff.

⁴ For this verse see also § 30 in fine.

an antelope, an elephant .., like a hind, let the kṛtyā go to its maker, 12 straighter than an arrow let it fly .. like a deer, 14 let it go like fire .., like water ... like a chariot .. : a flood of passionate desire, concentrated on a definite aim. The great accumulation only becomes evident when, in our society, we imagine someone who is about to turn away a person. He is not likely to use so many comparisons. Yet in magic texts of other peoples this abundance of comparisons is found too "so heißt es in der angelsächsischen Beschwörung einer Geschwulst. *Du mogest dich zusammenziehen wie Kohle auf dem Herde, schrumpfe ein wie Mist an der Wand, und schwinde wie Wasser im Eimer, so klein mögest du werden wie ein Leinsamenkorn*"¹. With the Letts: *.. Im Winde verschwinde, Geschwur, vergehe wie der abnehmende Mond, wie ein alter Bovrist*²; *.. verschwinden wie Morgentau, wie der abnehmende Mond, wie ein alter Bovrist*³. The magic effect of these similes will be treated further on⁴.

Elsewhere the similes belong to different verbs or to different sentences. 1, 14, 1, 4, 4, 7; 7, 4-5; 6, 14, 2-3, 142, 2; 13, 2, 46⁵ at the end of a sūkta, 4, 36, 6 *I am a vexer ... like a tiger, like dogs ... they do not find ...* In the Rgveda we find in a hymn to Uṣas, 1, 124, 7, "vier Vergleiche, die in ihrer Steigerung die zunehmende Schönheit der Uṣas veranschaulichen"⁶. Here the poet is enthusiastic about the beauty of the divine maid, the number of images he can find is wholly inadequate to express his feelings. RV. 1, 130, 1 the poet presses Indra passionately for a visit, with epiphora⁷ and an abundance of images: *endra yāhy upa naḥ parāvato nāyam achā vidathānīva satpatir astam rājeva satpatih*. See also 2, 39, 5 to the Aśvins, 5 similes¹ 1, 143, where Agni's might is described. See also 1, 66, 7; 91, 13; 105, 7-8, 1, 64, 2-8, in a hymn addressed to the Maruts.

In Vedic prose it is clear that a number of passages, although they contain archaic characteristics, are narrated in a relatively

¹ H. PONGS, Das Bild in der Dichtung, I, Versuch einer Morphologie der metaphorischen Formen, Marburg 1927, p. 150.

² See M. BARTELS, Zeitschrift d. Ver. f. Volkskunde 5, p. 31.

³ Idem, p. 34.

⁴ See § 43.

⁵ = RV. 5, 1, 1 etc.

⁶ GELDNER, Der Rgveda übersetzt und erläutert, I, p. 156.

⁷ See my Stilistische Studie, p. 35.

vivid way. Here also an abundance of similes is found. See e.g. Jaim. Br. no 168, p. 221 (ed Caland) with direct oration *sa yathā ksetrajño grāmam dhāvayed adah sugam tena yāsyāmo ... evam etau ... carato*, 'tha *yathā somappravākah somam prāharvam evam .. prāhatuh*, and further on, p 222¹, no 140², no 164³, no 168 I also refer to the argument about the man who, though he is learned in the Veda, not 'excels', no 140⁴. As for the nature of these similes see further on⁵. In trying to find the exact words Ch. Up. 3, 13, 8 *ninadam iva nadathum ivāgner iva jvalata upaśrnoti*

§ 37. It is interesting to see that in the episode of Nala an accumulation of similes is to be found exactly in those places, where the most important events of the story are narrated⁶. 1, 11–13, our first acquaintance with the heroine *she is like Indra's wife Śacī, like lightning, like Śrī* etc., 5, 3 ff., when the princes arrive for the svayamvara *they are like great lions that come to a mountain; their fore-arms are like iron clubs, like serpents with five heads* etc., 5, 43 ff., when Nala and Damayantī are newly-married, 16, 10, where Sudeva, one of the brahmans sent out by Bhīma in search of Damayantī, sees her and recognizes her; the 17 verses he says to himself contain many an instance of adnomination, alliteration, rhyme etc., and also a considerable number of similes⁷. 10 *lokakāntām iva śriyam*, 12 *ratim iva, pūrnacandra-prabhām iva*, 13 *mṛṇālīm iva coddhṛtām*, 14 *paurṇamāsīm iva nīśām*, .. *nadīm iva* and so on, (21, 4 ff., when D. hears the sound of Nala's horses. 4 *yathā meghasya nadato gambhīraṃ jaladāgame*, 7 *meghanāda ivotsukāh*, here we have repetition of the same image in a somewhat different form,) 24, 52 f., when N. and D. are reunited⁸ — In a menace Bhāsa, Cār 1, 26 + (pr) uses two similes (see in Bhāsa's works also Pr. 2, 13, 2, 7, 6, 2; 3 etc.); when Mālavikā departs, the king utters three similes (Kāl. M. 1, 11).

¹ See CALAND's translation, pp. 226f.

² See above, § 34.

³ Translation, pp. 212ff.

⁴ Translation, p. 170.

⁵ §§ 49ff.

⁶ See also above, § 34.

⁷ I also refer to OLDENBERG, Das Mahabharata, p. 147f.

⁸ 24, 53 (last verse of the adhyāya) is in long metre.

Prismatic diction we find for instance, when an almost incredible event is related at the fall of Drona Mbh 7, 9, 12 f *like the drying up of the ocean, like the moving off of the Meru like the fall of the sun I can not even conceive D's fall* See also 7, 1 24 ff when Bhīṣma has fallen *patite bharataśresthe babhūva kuruvāhinī | dyaur vāpetanaksatrā hīnam kham iva vāyunā | . | āsurīva yathā senā nigrhīte nrpe balau | vidhaveva varārohā śuskatoyeva nimnagā |* etc. etc When important matters are spoken of Bhīṣma lying on his couch of arrows, 7, 4, 2 ff at the beginning of Bhīṣma's address to Karna *even like the Ocean of the rivers, like the sun of the luminaries .. be you the refuge of your friends*, in a description of a battle 7, 13, 22 ff., of a duel 7, 15, 20 ff, 20, 15 sqq Sāv 2, 15 the hero is introduced with four similes, BhG. 11, 28-29 (long metre); 13, 32-33; 12, 320, 32-33, 14, 18, 9 ff At the end of an adhyāya Mbh 4, 14, 20, 15, 21, etc Only the man who has studied the Veda the gods consider to be venerable, says Manu. 2, 156, what is an unlearned Brāhmaṇa? *like an elephant made of wood, like an antelope made of leather* — (157I), two parallel and anaphoric¹ pādas. See also 6, 78, where Manu speaks about the person who leaves this body. A difficult doctrine BhG. 3, 38, an elaboration Mbh. 12, 262, 25.

In the Rāmāyana this figure is met with several times. I choose a number of different types from the fourth sarga. When the asura Dundubhi challenges the king of the monkeys Vālin, his appearance is like that of a cloud. *prāvṛṣīva mahāmeghas toya-pūrṇo nabhastale* (4, 11, 25), *he shakes the ground like a drum* (26)², *with his horn he scrapes the gate like an elephant* (27), then Vālin comes out in a hurry with his wives *like the moon with the stars*, now the last comparison which no doubt puns upon Tārā, Vālin's wife, looks less natural. See also 4, 16, 22 ff : single combat between Vālin and Sugrīva. *S., spitting out blood, resembles a mountain with waterfalls* (22), *V struck by a śāl-tree like a great mountain by the thunderbolt* (23), *he is perplexed and totters like a vessel on the sea; sunk by the overwhelming weight of her load* (24), *they rushed to fight like sun and moon fighting in the sky* (25). Also 17, 1 ff., when Vālin has been cast to the ground; 23, 17 ff Nīla removes the fatal arrow from Vālin's body; this arrow seems to

¹ For parallelism see my Stilistische Studie, pp. 37ff.

² *dundubhir dundubhir yathā*, see above, § 24.

be a *girigahvarasamlīnam dīptam āśvīvisam* (18), from the shaft shone a splendour like that of the setting sun (19), the stream of blood rushed out *tāmragairīkasamprkṭā dhārā va dharādharāt*. 27, 14 ff, where Rāma describes the splendid scenery on the Prasavaṇa-mountain, 28, 8 ff., where in a state of ecstasy Rāma describes the rains and is reminded of Sītā, we find almost one continued string of similes, 34, 1 ff. when Lakṣmana, being in a rage, has entered, he is *pradīptam iva tejasā* (2), Sugrīva springs up from his throne *mahān mahendrasya yathā svalaṃkṛta va dhvajah* (3), his wives follow him .. *gagane pūrṇaṃ candraṃ tārāgaṇā va*, he stands there *kalpavṛkṣo mahān iva* (5), L., angry, says to him who was *satāram śāśinam yathā* (6), although this is an accumulation of similes in a very emotional passage, the repeated allusion to *tārā* *Tārā* and the nature of one or two of the similes render it artificial to a certain extent. See also 61, 8 ff, where Sampātī relates his flight to the sun; the end of kāṇḍa 4 and the beginning of s. 5, where Hanumān's leap is described, etc. — Concatenation of similes in the same sentence. 4, 17, 9–10 Vālin wounded to death *gatārcīsam vānalam | yayātīm va . . devalokād iha cyutam | ādityam iva ... pātitam | mahendram va durdharaṣam upendram iva duhsaham*, Vālin scorning Rāma 17, 22 ff.; Vālin lying down 18, 2 *like the sun deprived of splendour, like the ocean without water ... like fire that has been extinguished*.

Although in places we find an archaic specimen (e.g. 4, 14, 21 at the end of a sarga: *dravanti ca mṛgāḥ śighraṃ bhagnā iva raṇe hayāḥ | patanti ca khagā bhūmau kṣīṇapūṇyā va grahāḥ*, with parallelism¹), in the main the accumulation of similes is found in a more advanced stage: the similes are longer, the images are occasionally less natural, and more than once the accumulation is too great to be a phenomenon of spontaneous speech. The last point, which, however, is not unknown in the Mbh. either, e.g. 12, 356, 2–6, has already been remarked by JACOBI², who referred to the description of the mourning town of Ayodhyā (2, 114): 16 similes in 16 verses, and to that of Sītā in prisonment (5, 19³) 29 similes; “das ist nicht mehr naive Verwendung einer Kunstform im Dienste der Sache, sondern ein Gefallen an der Form als solcher”.

¹ See my *Stilistische Studie*, p. 34.

² H. JACOBI, *Das Rāmāyana*, Bonn 1893, p. 120.

³ sic; 2, 19 is a printer's error.

Āśvaghoṣa proceeds in his own way with this accumulation, respectively prismatic diction Āśv S 2, 59 *like the month of Madhu* .., *like the new moon rising or like Ananga ... he (Nanda) was resplendent* . ; 4, 8 a-c 3 similes. This poet likes to employ the accumulation in a place which strikes the ear S 1, 1 ff , and the end of S. 1 (61-62), 3 (41-42), 15, 66-69 broadly elaborated comparisons of the goldwasher and the goldsmith, see 16, 97-98 Bc. 3 (64-65), 5 (86-87), 10 (41), 13 (71-73). He too likes to accumulate comparisons when reaching a climax S. 2, 52-62 the birth of Buddha and Nanda etc., 4, 6 ff the beauty and love of Nanda and his wife. 4, 28 ff Buddha's ineffectual visit to Nanda's house, 4, 39 ff Nanda's departure, 6, 24 ff Sundarī's despair, Bc. 5, 49 ff the well-known account how the Buddha, on the night of his leaving his home, sees the women of his seraglio all asleep, Āśv. has a greater number of similes than the parallel description¹ in the Rāmāyaṇa, 5, 10, 34-49. See also Bc. 8, 20 ff. 71 ff ; 13, 36 ff. Often this accumulation of similes is somewhat monotonous, and in places they are far-fetched, see e g. Bc. 6 31 ff.; now and then also sound-figures are employed, and these too often lack artlessness.

In Kālidāsa's works too prismatic diction in the first half of a verse is found e g Kum 7, 26 *kṣīrodaveleva sapheṇapuñjā pary-āptacandрева śarattriyāmā* | ... *sā bhūyo babhau*; in a-c 6, 55; 7. 21, in a, b, d 3, 48, however beautiful the images are, they do not belong to spontaneous speech. Completely artificial, at once by the length of the parts and by the wording Bhav, Uttarar 2, 26 *cirād vegārambhī prasṛta iva tīvra visarasah* | *kutaś cit samvegāt pracala iva śalyasya śakalah* | *vraṇo rūdhagranthih sphuṭita iva hr̥nmarmaṇi punar* | *ghanibhūtaḥ śoko vikalayati māṃ nūtana iva* Dandin, Dśkc p 46, 3 ff. (NS.¹⁰) not the images which are quite common in themselves, but the fact of their being combined in one sentence, and the sound-effect caused by this combination, are artificial. *sā mūrtimatīva lakṣmīr mālaveśakanyakā svenaivārādhyamānaṃ samkalpitavarapradānāyāvīrbhūtaṃ mūrtiman-taṃ manmatham iva tam ālokyā mandamārutāndolitā lateva madanā-veśavatī cakampe*. Bhār. Kir. 12, 17, however the comparisons are learned and artificial. — That also the Buddhists knew "eine

¹ See E. B. COWELL, The Buddha-carita of Āśvaghoṣa, Anecd Oxon 1893, p. XI

kunstvolle Anhaufung von Gleichnissen''¹ has already been noticed by others —

Thus abundance of similes too has been made a stylistic device in kāvyaworks, more than once it has been elaborated in an unnatural way, see e.g. Bhāsa, Dhg 1, 27 (śārd.), Kāl. Urv. 5, 21

§ 38 Lovers have always had a predilection for metaphors and similes in describing the excellences of their sweethearts. Some scholars have even been under the impression that here is the root of all metaphors etc.², but this is improbable. Yet, as Kālidāsa makes the king, who is in love with Śakuntalā, recite (Kāl Ś. 1, 21) a stanza containing two comparisons in the shape of compounds followed by (c) a varying *iva*-simile, this is only the work of a linguistic artist. More artificial. 2, 11, and, in a still higher degree, Urv. 1, 7.

§ 39. R. M. MEYER³ has remarked that with the ancient Germans (e.g. in ancient Norse literature) the older similes are borrowed chiefly from the animal world, and further also from the vegetable kingdom, the younger, on the contrary, are taken from human life⁴, these younger similes, he says, are more intensifying and less illustrating than the older "Der kleine Bauer, der nie von seinem Hof geht ausser bei Krieg und Landesnot, hat nie einen königlichen Mann erblickt, der seine ganze Schar um Hauptes Länge überragt eine riesige Esche im Walde hat er oft bemerkt...". Now, greater coherence may be given to this observation. For 'primitive' man there exists a close connection between things in human life and nature.⁵ A contrast may be drawn between modern cultivated mankind and 'primitive' man, namely the former objectivizes its environments and stands in an independent and superior relation to it, while primitive man appertains, as he takes it himself, to his envioning sphere and to nature in general. To him the difference between mankind

¹ M. WINTERITZ, Geschichte der Indischen Litteratur, II, p. 85.

² H. SCHUCHARDT, Romanisches und Keltisches (1886), pp. 248f., MANNHARDT, quoted by VAN DER MEULEN, o.c., p. 163.

³ RICHARD M. MEYER, Deutsche Stilistik², München 1913, p. 151.

⁴ Cp. OLDENBERG, Mahabharata (1922), p. 164 "Irre ich nicht, tritt menschliches Leben und Treiben ... in den Vergleichen [viz. in the Mbh.] merklich weniger hervor als die beschaulichere Natur."

⁵ Cp., e.g., C. MEINHOF, Die Dichtung der Afrikaner (1911), pp. 16ff.

and animal is much smaller than to us: essential differences between humanity and the non-human part of creation he hardly recognizes. There exists for him a certain coherence between nature and natural events on one side and man and human events on the other side¹. But not only primitive man, we also are prone to look upon phenomena and events in nature as analogous with those in our own body and mind — “l’homme a la manie de se retrouver dans ce qui n’est pas lui”² — and to see the latter in relation with the former and in the light of the former. This is evident too from the great number of popular sayings containing similes, such as *as frightened as a hare, to lead a cat-and-dog life, lion-hearted* etc.³ In the world of popular songs and tales, in the country-life of former times, in primitive societies in general we may state ever and again that many similarities and equalizations between our own life and that of nature are construed “Der ursprüngliche Mensch ... fühlt sich als ein Teil der Natur”⁴, “(er) verknüpft mit der Natur das Schicksal des Menschen”⁵ “Man muss wissen, wie eng das Volk mit der Natur zusammenhängt und welchen Einfluss das Naturleben auf seine geselligen Vergnügungen, auf sein Gemeinschaftsleben ausübt, um zu begreifen, dass jede Berührung dieser Vorgänge eines Widerhalls in den Herzen der Hörer sicher sein darf.”⁶ ‘Primitive’ man — in the broadest sense⁷ — likes to associate the coldness of winter with sorrow and misery, springtime with love and new life⁸. *Der walt hat sich entlaubet | gen disem winter kalt | merner freud bin ich be-
raubet | gedenken macht mich alt.*⁹ “Aus dem Zusammenfühlen

¹ See especially O. BOCKEL, *Psychologie der Volksdichtung*, pp. 234ff., R. v. D. MEULEN, *o.c.*, pp. 14, 17, 27, etc. Man exerting influence upon nature e.g. AV 2, 12, 1

² CH. BALLY, *Traité de stylistique française*² I, pp. 187f., also e.g. FRED. W. MOORMAN, *Interpretation of nature in English poetry*, Strassburg 1905, p. 33

³ See above, § 12. Cp. also F. SEILER, *Das deutsche Sprichwort*, 1918, pp. 39ff.

⁴ JOS. WEIGERT, *Des Volkes Denken und Reden*, Freiburg im Breisgau, 1925, p. 5.

⁵ *Id.*, p. 46.

⁶ ROB. PETSCH, *Volksdichtung und volkstümliches Denken*, Hessische Blätter für Volkskunde 2 (1903), p. 209.

⁷ See my *Stilistische Studie*, p. 19, n. 4

⁸ Cp. e.g. MRECH, 5, 1 and 46.

⁹ H. PONGS, *Das Bild in der Dichtung*, I, p. 206.

von Natur und Mensch ergibt sich ein Wahrnehmen paralleler Vorgänge in beiden Bezirken, das tieferliegende Sinnzusammenhang empföhlt *Ich hort ein sicheln rauschen | wol rauschen durch das korn | ich hort eine feine magt klagen | sie het ir lieb verlorn* Hier ist das Rauschen unterm Sichelschnitt und das Klagen zusammengefühlt, das Rauschen des Kornes ist auch ein Klagen Die Sichel aber faszt in sich den Sinn eines naturhaft schicksalhaften Endes, das ähnlich über dieser Liebe schwebt"¹. "Die malaische Epik ist reich an Gleichnissen Meistens werden zum Vergleich herbeigezogen Objekte aus der Natur ..."². On the one hand they intensify and 'humanify' the life of nature On the other hand man places his own life on a broader basis, he lifts it up high above the exceptional, above what is experienced only once or incidentally or only by one single individual. A primitive feeling is created of being in touch with the universal. This need not exclude aesthetic appreciation or aesthetic value of linguistic expressions of such experiences and feelings.³

In the language this is also expressed in its similes.⁴ From a Betuvian⁵ rustic story *Mar krek zoo min as in de naotuur de hemel altai' blaouw is, zoo min is da' ôk in 'n minsebestaon* ("but just as the sky is not always blue, a man's life is not always a bed of roses"). In substance the life of nature remains always the same, and man, inasmuch as he sees resemblances, will ever and anon mark the same agreements Comparisons borrowed from nature may be produced again at every turn and always remain young as long as contact with nature is maintained. At several places and in different epochs the same properties of animals, plants and things may induce man to comparing human qualities with them. In this connection I refer to the considerable stock of popular comparisons which are current in many languages, e.g. *as sly as a fox* etc. ⁶.

¹ PONGS, o.c., p. 208. See also e.g. TH. W. DANZEL, *Kultur und Religion des primitiven Menschen*, Stuttgart 1924, pp. 19ff.; VAN DER MEULEN, o.c., p. 104.

² R. BRANDSTETTER, *Charakterisierung der Epik der Malaien*, Luzern 1891, p. 40.

³ Cp. e.g. F. BOAS, *Primitive Art*, pp. 327ff.

⁴ Cp. also WEIGERT, o.c., p. 39 a.o.

⁵ In the Netherlandish province of Guelders.

⁶ For English, see e.g. GREENOUGH and KITTREDGE, *Words and their ways in English speech* (1914), p. 362.

As is well-known, in ancient India too the relation of man and nature is quite different from that of a modern and intellectual European and his environment. Man is a part of nature. Man and nature interact on each other. Of this there exists abundant evidence to which I need not refer.¹ And, just as in other ancient literatures, in the Indian texts a very great number of the similes are borrowed from nature which surrounds man.² In the first seven books of the Atharvaveda, for instance, the number of upamānas taken from man, human events and human circumstances, from social and spiritual life, is about 20, that borrowed from technics etc. somewhat less, that of 'mythological' upamānas ± 5 , but similes borrowed from nature (animals, plants, elements, cosmological and geographical ideas etc.) about 60. From the 22 ideas that occur more than once, 15 belong to this category. Fire and cow head the list, then follow horse, water, bull, sea, sun, wolf, reed, bird, tree, at the bottom of the list stand wind, sky, lightning, mrga.³ I also refer to the works of HIRZEL and Mrs. RHYS DAVIDS, which I discussed in the beginning of this paper.⁴ As we have stated already⁵, even in the Brāhmaṇas similes are found, and here too events in the life of animals etc. are upamānas: see e.g. Jaim. Br. no 29; 140. Epic comparisons, such as Mbh. 7, 2, 12 *nīpātīte śāntanave ... / divākare bhūtalām āsthite yathā*; 10, 23 *vāto vegād vāvīdhyān meghān śaragaṇair nṛpān* are often to be found.

§ 40. In my opinion, we must often explain a simile from the said relations between man and nature, in other words we must consider a comparison as having its root in the conception of the world of the Indian. When in the story of Nala we read 11, 39 *uktamātre tu vacane tathā sa mrgajivanaḥ | vyasuḥ papāta medīnyām agnidagdha iva drumah*, we see that the hunter, struck by the curse of Damayantī, falls on the ground like a tree that has

¹ For the Mahābhārata, see H. OLDENBERG, Das Mahabharata, pp 78ff.: Das Weltbild des Epos.

² For the 'Spruchdichtung', see WINTERNITZ, Geschichte der altindischen Litteratur, III, p. 137.

³ Of course this is only a rough calculation. there are texts and words that are not very clear, ideas that may belong to more than one category or that can hardly be classified, the same verse or passage may occur two or more times.

⁴ See pp. 8 and 9.

⁵ See p. 37.

been burned with fire (lightning). For us this simile may perhaps elucidate the quickness and completeness of the effect of the 'curse, for an Indian, however, it is more. he is firmly convinced that the effect of a curse is identical to that of fire, that a curse is a form of fire¹. Likewise in the case of a comparison about the effect of a snake's poison with lightning, Mbh. 1, 180 (Pauṣya) both are a form of fire.² The same holds good with regard to a brāhmana: his essence too participates in fire therefore I see more than an individual effusion in Manu 9, 317 (cf. 318 f.): *a brāhmana . . . is a great divinity, just as fire ... is a great divinity*; see also 3, 168, Mbh. 1, 180, 2 Aurva: *anistīrṇo hi mām roṣo dahed agnir vāranim* — In the same way the comparison of the two Soma-presses with two pudenda is not a subjective thought of an individual, see e.g. RV. 1, 28, 2, cp. e.g. 3, 29, 1 and the texts quoted by MEYER.³ RV. 1, 110, 6 *ā manīsām antarikṣasya nṛbhyah sruceva ghṛtam juhavāma vidmanā* this is not a real 'comparison', for a hymn or prayer is a kind of offering⁴; like ghee it invigorates the gods, see e.g. also 1, 61, 1. Sometimes we find metaphors and identifications by the side of similes. It is a well-known fact too that in Indian religious thought identifications and the like are highly esteemed often things in nature and human things are put on a par. These equalizations gave rise to similes⁵

§ 41. We should add that the comparison of mood and feelings of man and of his adventures with what happens in his environments, especially in nature — "(in) der bewegten und beseelten Natur"⁶ — is not foreign to the works of our poets and prosaists. We will find it especially in emotional moments, when the mood of the hero harmonizes with the mood of surrounding nature. As

¹ Cp. J. HERTEL, Die Sonne und Mithra im Awesta (1927), p. 45, Awest. Herrschafts- und Siegesfeuer, Index, s.v. āfrīti.

² J. HERTEL, Awest. Herrschafts- und Siegesfeuer, Index, s.v. Gift, Beiträge zur Erklärung d. Awesta u. d. Ved, Abh. Sachs. Ges. d. Wiss. 40 (1930), pp. 224f.; 235.

³ J. J. MEYER, Trilogie altindischer Mächte ... der Vegetation, III, p. 187.

⁴ See my paper The meaning of vedic *bhūṣati*, pp. 9ff.

⁵ See OLDENBERG, Vorwissenschaftliche Wissenschaft, pp. 110ff., and further on, § 62.

⁶ W. SCHNEIDER, Ausdruckswerte der deutschen Sprache, 1931, p. 146.

we saw above primitive man also knows this phenomenon. It is also possible that the scenery conjured up by the author leads to the associating of nature with human feelings and conditions e.g. neth. *A. wist er nets van, maar ze was een vlasblond, kriekeblozend . appelrond meisje, gezond en blij als de bloemen waarin ze soms te wentelen lag in het zonnige gras* ¹ Or *Tusschen het teedere groen . voelde hij zich op eens thuis, als een vogel die zijn nest gevonden had* ² But here the similes have an individual character and are products of the genius or of the art or skill of an author. In the same way Kālidāsa in the beautiful eighth canto of the Kumārasambhava, 73. *the moon joins its yogyatārā, whose orb trembles, as the bridegroom with a newly-married maid*, the verse is said by Śiva to Pārvatī during their honey-moon. That the great poets of India 'created'³ many a splendid simile borrowed from nature goes without saying, see e.g. Kāl. Kum. 3, 18, 4, 46, 5, 85 That comparisons which perhaps occurred to other people quite as well have been expressed in words by a great artist in an unsurpassable way holds good for India as well Kāl Megh. 89, Ragh. 15, 66, here we have creation of beauty. "Kālidāsa belauscht die Natur mit innigerem und, es scheint, eingehenderem Verstandnis als wir"⁴.

With adnominatio. Aśv. S. 4, 39 Sundarī watched her husband going away, *bhrāntam mṛgam bhrāntamukhī mṛgiva*. Elaborated: Aśv. Bc. 5, 49 *another woman (in the seraglio) with her flute in her hand and with her white garment fallen away from her bosom, lay stretched like a river, whose lotuses were visited by a row of guileless bees, and whose banks looked as if smiling by the foam of water*; see also 13, 39 and other places⁵.

§ 42. For another important reason too we should not lose sight of this intimate coherence of ancient Indian man with nature and his being tuned differently from our conceptions. For him a close contact, a parallelism, and a mutual influence are always extant. Now primitive man is wont to find out the exact coherence to

¹ See Jc. SMIT, *Bydrage tot de kennis van Potgieters Styl*. Diss. Utrecht 1937, p. 87.

² FR. v. EEDEN, *De kleine Johannes*¹¹, p. 96.

³ See further on, § 66.

⁴ A. HILLEBRANDT, *Kalidasa, Ein Versuch zu seiner literarischen Würdigung* (1921), p. 114. See also p. 116.

⁵ See also § 67.

avail himself of this knowledge. He works by means of the connections known to him¹. These connections and this work we call magic. It is a well-known fact that in magic 'Vorbildzauber' play an important part when a certain thing is in some way affected or influenced, it involves a corresponding event to another thing, connected with it in a magical way. Next we must call to mind the great importance of the word in magic and religion². The word of man has a magical, a creative power, the word of Power is mighty in the mouth of man. The word is able to have the same effect as a rite. When 'primitive' man wishes to attain a certain aim or to bring about a certain effect, he may have recourse to a rite, but also to an expression of desire in the form of words, which we call a spell. The word of Power exercises potent influence. It owes its power to precise recitation and to an exact mentioning of every detail. Now when the spoken word accompanies a rite, it may, of course, take various forms. When, for instance, the New Caledonian kindles a fire to make the sun's heat increase, he adds at the same time the formula: *Sun, I do this that you may be burning hot*³. But by the side of it the word often takes the form of a more or less detailed comparison, being an exact expression in language of the parallelism of the magical happening, more than once with an accurate filling in of the details. I refer to a very interesting Sumerian rite, which has been discussed by BARTELS⁴: "Wenn die Heilung (einer Krankheit) eintreten soll, so muss dieselbe unter der Form .. einer Abschälung . der Oberhaut vor sich gehen, und darum wird der Wunsch

¹ See e.g. C. READ, *The Psychology of Magic*, *The British Journal of Psychology*, 7 (1914), p. 168.

² See f.i. G. VAN DER LEEUW, *Religion in essence and manifestation*, London, 1938, pp. 422ff.; also N. ADRIANI, *Verzamelde Geschriften*, II, pp. 390ff.; III, p. 14ff.

³ See J. MURPHY, *Primitive Man*, Oxford, 1927, p. 235.

⁴ M. BARTELS, *Zeitschrift für Assyriologie*, 8, p. 179ff. For Babylonia etc. see also the examples given by O. WEBER, *Die Literatur der Babylonier und Assyrier* (1907), pp. 116; 164. Likewise in Australia C. VON STREHLow, *Das soziale Leben der Aranda und Luritja* (1913), I, p. 33. A very interesting rite for fertility on the isle of Sumatra FORBES, *Wanderungen*, quoted by H. WERNER, *Die Ursprünge der Metapher*, p. 58. Likewise among the Lillooet Indians (British Columbia), the Arapahos, the natives of the Admiralty Islands; see WERNER, *Die Ursprünge der Metapher* (1919), p. 70; in Africa: C. MEINHOF, o.c., p. 99f.

ausgesprochen . *sicut allrum desquametur*".

Now it is not difficult to show that also in ancient Indian magical texts many a simile is an exact expressing in words of a magical act AV. 3, 6, 7I, e.g. we read *te 'dharāñcaḥ pra plavantām chinnā naur va bandhanāt*, "let them float forth downward, like a boat cut off from its moorings", now this simile is not an ornament nor an image like our expression *to send a person out on the high seas in a shallop* the verse occurs in a rite of sorcery mentioned in Kaus. s. 48, 3 ff., where it is prescribed that a man who wishes to get rid of his foes has to put an equally large number of snares (*pāśa-*) as he has foes in a little boat and then to let it drift and sink. The sūkta's 4, 4 and 6, 101 are to be employed for the recovery of virility. 4, 4, 6d and 6, 101, 2d run *ghanur ivā tānayā pasah*, "make his member taut like a bow", these words too are not an 'image' Kauś. 40, 15 prescribes: "he places a bow which is strung in his lap". AV. 5, 29, 12 f. we read "let this man swell like a soma-stalk", *aṁśur ivā pyāyatām ayaṁ* etc., these words activate a process from the ritual, see f.i. Āp. śr. s. 11, 1 11¹. These similes clearly made the mantras what they were, made the 'Sondersprache' of the mantras fit to answer its purpose, because they are an essential part of it: without them these formulas, incantations and prayers would be *anarthakāḥ*.²

Now this form also occurs, when the spoken word is only a substitute for the rite.³ It has already been remarked by OLDENBERG⁴ that a Vedic simile sometimes has a magical character: "die im Vergleich genannten Wesen oder Ereignisse sollen in der eben vorliegenden Situation ihr Gegenbild nach sich ziehen" AV. 1, 11, 6 etc. "An Stelle des magischen Symbols tritt das magische Gleichnis"⁵: *So wahr dieses oder jenes stattfindet, so wahr soll ... stattfinden*. Cp. AV. 4, 39, 1; 3; 5; 7 *on the earth they paid reverence to Agni* (etc.); *he throve; as ... they p.r. to A.* (etc.), *so let they pay r. to me*.

¹ See also CALAND, Das Śrautasūtra des Āpastamba, II, p. 193.

² Cp. my paper The meaning of the word *alamkāra*, p. 111.

³ A fine transitional instance is mentioned by A. C. HADDON, The Ethnography of the Western Tribes of Torres Straits, Journal of the Antropol. Inst. 1890, p. 217.

⁴ H. OLDENBERG, Religion des Veda, p. 515.

⁵ ST. SCHAYER, Die Struktur der magischen Weltanschauung, Zeitschr. für Buddhismus 6 (1925), p. 299.

§ 43. In the following texts it is not a rite, but an event or a phenomenon in nature or kosmos that forms the parallel act, the example or 'Beispiel' AV. 6, 14, 2, against the *balāsa*¹ *I destroy the balāsa of the sick man .. chinadmy asya bandhanam mūlam urvārvā iva*², *I cut its bond like the root of a gourd* (the stem of this fruit becomes loosened of itself when it is ripe)³; here a natural phenomenon which acts automatically is example, 'Beispiel'. See also 6, 54, 1 *do you increase his kṣatra and his śrī as the rain the grass*; 3, 24, 3 (for abundance of grain) *may they bring fatness here, like streams (bring) drift when it has rained*; 6, 89, 2 *vātam dhūma iva ... mām evānvetu te manah*, 5, 14, 10; 20, 3, 6, 37, 2, 7, 45, 2, 3, 18, 6 (end of the sūkta, 2 similes) 6, 37, 1 the dreaded wolf appears *the curse pursues the curser as the wolf (seeks) the house of a sheep-owner*, cp 5, 8, 4; 7, 50, 5, tiger 4, 36, 6. With other peoples similar 'images' are often met with in magical incantations. "Gegen den Krampf spricht man im Voigtlande ... *Geschwind, wie der Rauch vom Wind, wie der Nebel von der Sonne sollst du gehn von dannen*"⁴ . . "Die Letten gegen Schlangenbiss ... *wie Rauch werden sie vergehen*"⁴; an interesting Greek instance. ὅστέρα μελάνη μελανωμένη, ὥς ὄφις εἰλύεσαι καὶ ὥς λέων βρυχᾶσαι καὶ ὥς ἀρνίον κοιμοῦ⁵. Moreover, I draw attention to the remarks of GUTMANN on the 'literature' of the Dschaggane-groes⁶ "Er redet ... die Krankheit selber an und spricht *Verwese wie der Schmetterling, der hienhin weht und dahin weht und dort vergeht*. Während der heißen Zeit finden sich die Schmetterlinge in dichten Scharen am Ufer der Bache ein, um dann bei Beginn der Regenzeit wie weggeblasen zu verschwinden und zu sterben. So ist der Schmetterling ein Sinnbild der Unkraft, die vor dem Zauberworte des Mannes entflieht ..., u.s.w." Cp. AV. 19, 50, 4 *as the millet-seed flying forth, is not found, so ... make him fly forth* ...⁷. The power of the objective fact or event in nature is

¹ *kāśaśvāsātma- śleṣmaroga-* Comm.

² See 14, 1, 17.

³ See also WHITNEY-LANMAN, o.c., p. 291.

⁴ BARTELS, Zeitschrift des Vereins für Volkskunde, 5, p. 27, vgl also pp. 29, 31.

⁵ See DREXLER, Philologus, 58, pp. 594ff.; NORDEN, Antike Kunstprosa, pp. 822f

⁶ GUTMANN, Dichten und Denken der Dschagganeger, 1909, p. 159.

⁷ M JASTROW, Die Religion Babyloniens und Assyriens, I, pp. 345f. (Krankheit.) *gleich einer Taube, die ihr Nest aufsucht, entfliehe...*

cast in the manifestation of the will of the magician and benefits the analogous case which is to be influenced ¹ *AY.* 6, 8, 1 *as the libujā* (creeping plant) *has completely embraced the tree, so do you embrace me* (to a woman whose love is to be won²), with repetition of the verb³ 6, 139, 5, 7, 13, 1, 10, 6, 33; 14, 2, 37⁴. Next we should compare such instances as 6, 15, 3 *as of herbs soma is highest ... as the talāsā of trees, (so) may I be highest*⁵. 2, 15, 1 (-6). "Zahlreiche Segensformeln verdanken ihr Entstehen dem Glauben an die Sympathie zwischen Vorgängen in der lebenden Natur und dem menschlichen Körper"⁶ "Segnung des Kindes *nicht rote sich dein Auge wie Rotol, weisz sei es wie Lernen*"⁷

A very fine example of an incantation in prose *AY.* 17, 1, 20f, cp. 6a and the burden, 6 ff.

Some instances from other texts *RV* 5, 78, 7 *yathā vātah puṣkarinīm samingayati sarvataḥ | evā te garbha ejatu ...*, 1, 106, 1 *ratham na durgād vasavaḥ sudānavo vīśvasmān no amhaso nispiṣartana*.

An interesting passus in later literature is *Rām* 4, 67, 1 ff, where the host of the monkeys rose at Hanumān and praised him, when he was on the point of leaping across the ocean; then being praised, he grew and increased (4 I *saṃstūyamāno hanumān vyavardhata mahābalaḥ*); he was filled with *tejas*, "energy", his outward appearance became excellent (5 II). Now, all these details are related in the past tense, like vs. 7 ff., vs 6, however, reads *yathā vjṛmbhate simho vivṛte girigahvare | mārutasyaurasaḥ putras tathā samprati jṛmbhate*, "as a lion stretches his limbs . . so H. ..." in the present tense. The cheers and the praises may

¹ "Sowohl Naturanschauung als auch Naturgeschehen werden in der Sprachform eingefangen und so magisch verwertbar", WERNER, o.c., p. 72, who quotes several instances, borrowed from P. G. PEEKE, *Religion und Zauberei auf dem mittleren Neumecklenburg* (1910), pp. 91ff.

² For this comparison, §§ 63f.

³ See further on.

⁴ Compare M. WINTERITZ, *Das altindische Hochzeitsrituell usw.* (Wiener Denkschriften, 1892, vol. 40), p. 92.

⁵ See WHITNEY-LANMAN, p. 291.

⁶ OSKAR EBERMANN, *Blut- und Wundsegen in ihrer Entwicklung dargestellt*, Palaestra 24, Berlin 1903, p. 108.

⁷ D. WESTERMANN, *Die Gldyi-Ewe in Togo*, p. 18.

have a magical meaning, shouting and praising set power in action and strengthen a person¹, in this context it strengthens Hanumān, who has to take upon himself the important deed in the name of the whole group. This *yathā-tathā*-simile, which for the rest is rare in Rām. IV, reminds us of the magical incantations of the AV. It seems to me that for the author the magical passing of power from the lion to H. is living or reviving reality.

To preclude misunderstanding I remark that, as a matter of course, comparisons based on nature etc. are often by no means magical: Nala 5, 3, 17, 6, 11 are hyperbolical similes, Mbh. 7, 21, 2 is an epic and delineating simile, etc.

I also draw attention to the well-known 'ritual identifications'² occurring in the Brāhmanas, f.1 Jaim. Br. no 96 (Caland) at the end: ... *tān yad anustubhānupratipadyante, vāg vā anustub, vāg u var vācayitrī, vācā vā āha. prehi . . sa yathā vācā brūyāt prehi . tādṛk tat*³. KB 11, 8 as a chariot .. so is the sacrifice, TS. 2, 5, 11, 5 as the mind so is *Prajāpati*, are identifications that have taken the form of a 'simile', "gewiß ist das nicht anders gedacht, als wenn es heißt *Prajāpati ist der Atem* (ŚB 4, 5, 5, 13)"⁴. We know that the ancient Indians tried their utmost to avail themselves of the knowledge of these identifications.

§ 44. Elsewhere divine power, aid or skill is invoked. AV. 4, 12, 7, at the end of a well-known sūkta⁵ with which they intended to heal serious wounds: as a *Rbhu* the parts of a chariot, may it (the herb which seems to have had healing properties) put together joint with joint⁶. Compare german 'Segen', as f.1. "(um Blut zu stillen) ... *du sollst still stehen, wie Jesus ... gestanden*", "(um Schmerzen zu legen) *ich stille dir die Schmerzen, wie unserem lieben Herrn Jesu gestanden sind am Stamm des Kreuzes*"⁷. AV. 19, 31 is a sūkta to win

¹ See e.g. my paper The meaning of vedic *bhūṣati*, Wageningen 1939, pp. 9ff.

² See e.g. H. OLDENBERG, Vorwissenschaftliche Wissenschaft. Die Weltanschauung der Brāhmana-Texte, 1919, pp. 110ff.; A. B. KEITH, The Religion and Philosophy of the Veda and Upanishads. 1925, p. 484, and further on, § 62.

³ See also CALAND's translation, p. 107.

⁴ OLDENBERG, o.c., p. 115.

⁵ See KUHN, KZ. 13, p. 58.

⁶ Paipp. has a quite different text.

⁷ HEILIG, Zeitschr. d. Ver. f. Volkskunde 5 (1895), ... pp. 9, 15 (Segen aus Handschuhsheim bei Heidelberg).

various blessings with an amulet of udumbara in verse 9 in the apodosis the goddess Sarasvatī is invoked.

§ 45. Very often, indeed, magical texts borrow the 'similes' from the domain of mythology and history, between which the boundaries are vague. With AV. 2, 27 they wished to come off victorious in a dispute, by means of a certain plant, the root of which had to be chewed (according to Kauś 38, 18–21, where the rite is described), now in vs. 3 and 4 it reads *Indra put (that plant) on his arm and consumed it in order to lay down the Asuras*, thereupon 5 *with (that plant) I will overpower the foes, as Indra did the sālāvṛkas*¹, in 6 and 7 Rudra and Indra are invoked to crush the opponent. The 'simile' in stanza 5 makes active the mighty deed of Indra who overpowered the sālāvṛkas in the same way as the facts related in 3 and 4. — Kauś 47, 20² prescribes that the man who wishes to crush his foe by means of AV 6, 135, has to perform what is stated in that text now, stanza 1 reads. *because I eat, I make strength, thus I take the thunderbolt, cutting to pieces the shoulders of N N., as Indra of Vṛtra*, here the mighty deed of Indra has been made active. See 10, 3, 11. One might compare the prescriptions in Kauś. 47, 14 and 18 and the same 'simile' in AV 6, 134, 1. A 'historical' event AV 18, 4, 55, with parallelism, assonance, alliteration³.

Elsewhere ancient and approved magic power is set in motion once more AV. 1, 29, 1 *with the maṇi (amulet), by means of which Indra increased, with that o Brahmanaspati, make us increase unto sovereignty*, see also 1, 14, 4, 35, 1, 7, 38, 2, 2, 32, 3 = 5, 23, 10 we find a simile like *Atri, K and J I slay you followed by with the incantation of Agastya I crush the worms*⁴. Here mythological and historical events are used as 'Beispiel' Very interesting are the stanzas AV. 9, 2, 17 and 18, which have nearly the same words, 17 however reads: *with which (yena) the gods thrust forth the asuras .. with that (tena) do you, Kāma, thrust forth .. my rivals*, 18 as ... so ... (*yathā .. tathā*); resuscitation of magic power. 13, 1, 38 *aham bhūyāsam savitēva cāruḥ* in a hymn addressed to Rohita

¹ See H. OERTEL, JAOS. 19, 2, pp. 123f., WHITNEY-LANMAN, o c, p. 68.

² See also CALAND, Altindisches Zauberritual, p. 161.

³ See WHITNEY-LANMAN, pp 871, 886, pāda d is not clear.

⁴ TA. 4, 36, 1a, Ap Śr.S. 15, 19, 5, however, read *atrinā tvā krīme hanmi*.

(= the Ruddy Sun, cp. 19. 45, 4) seems to be in the first place magical. Other instances taken from the Atharvaveda 5, 8, 8, cp. 9, 6, 64, 1, 85, 3, 141, 3. — AV 14, 1, 53 during the nuptial ceremonies they mention the name of the mighty divine prototype when the bride is dressed in a new garment¹ . . . *envelop this woman, like Sūryā, with progeny*, cp. also 14, 2, 31, 32 (cp. Kauś. 79, 6)

That in German languages there exist incantations corresponding with these atharvamic stanzas was noticed as early as the year 1864 by A. Kuhn² in a famous paper on 'Indische und germanische Segenssprüche'. It is also apparent from the many instances published afterwards that parallelism is the most favourite form of exorcising. See for instance the well-known 'Jordan-Segen'³, and the 'Longinus-Segen' "Zu den ältesten Bestandteilen der christlichen Legende gehört die Erzählung von dem blinden Landsknecht Longinus, der Christus mit der Lanze in die Seite stach und durch das aus der Wunde stromende Blut sein Gesicht wieder erhielt. In die Segenlitteratur ist die Legende schon in sehr früher Zeit eingedrungen (12 Jhdt), zB. *De Jud L. der unsern herren J. C. staeche .. daz eneitert nith, noch gewan hitze, noch enswar, noch enbluotet* , *alsô tuo diru wunde. diru enbluot nith zervl, noch engewinne hitze, noch enswaer, noch .., die ich gesent* (d.h. gesegnet) *habe*."⁴ In those 'Segensformeln' that have the outward appearance of a simile (*wie damals Maria .., so soll auch jetzt ..*) "liegt die Heilkraft zwar auch noch zum Theil in der Autorität der beteiligten Persönlichkeit, .. aber zum Theil .. in den Worten selbst"⁵. "Ursprünglich beruhte die Beziehung zwischen dem in dem Segen angeführten Ereignis und der erhofften Wirkung durchaus auf dem Parallelismus der Begebenheiten"⁶, against cancer *Sollst du vergehen gleich wie die, so unsern Herrn Jm C'm gekreuzigt haben*, etc.⁷ This sort of incantations is found with many a people the ancient Egyptian ma-

¹ See M. WINTERNITZ, *Altind. Hochzeitsrituell*, p. 47

² KZ 13, pp. 113ff.

³ OSKAR EBERMANN, *Blut- und Wundsegen*, p. 24

⁴ *Ibid.*, pp. 42f

⁵ SCHONBACH, *Studien zur Geschichte der altdeutschen Predigt*, Sitzber. Wien 1900 (142), p. 125.

⁶ EBERMANN, o.c., p. 140, cp. p. 132. See also A. WUTTKE-E. H. MEYER, *Der deutsche Volksaberglaube*³, 1900, §§ 226ff.

⁷ HEILIG (see above), p. 294.

gician who wished to cure a serpent's bite narrated a long myth containing the story of Ra, who, bitten by a snake, was cured by the mighty enchantress Isis¹ Hence the epic narration in many a magical incantation².

As in later texts too instances of the belief in the coherence between man and nature are to be found: Kāl., Śak 1. 19+, e.g. so Priyamvadā remarks that Śak. is thinking *as (the jasmine creeper) has been united to a tree worthy of it, so may I too get a worthy husband (jahā — evam-simile)* —, so also the belief in the stimulating force of revived historical or mythological events is present. An objective historical fact, a deed of a person who is considered to be an authority has conclusive force. When the Aśvins have given a cake to Upamanyu and he declines to eat it, their only argument is: "formerly we gave such a cake to your guru, and he ate it" (Mahābh 1, 3), in the Mrcch 3, 11 Śarvilaka has a mythological justification for his acting as a burglar. Drona too attacked his foes at night! Kāl. Ragh. 16, 22 the presiding deity of Ayodhyā comes to Kuśa and presses him to come back to her *just as (yathā) your father (Rāma), having given up the human form assumed once more his (own) form of the Supreme Soul (Viṣṇu): "as true as your father .., do you also .."* — In relation with a fable Pañc. ed Bo. I 315. Aśv., Bc 8, 8 and 81 compares Buddha's departure with that of Rāma, but here the similes are chiefly ornaments. 8 *purā rathe dāśarather vāgate*.

§ 46. Not every mythological comparison, however, has the same force. Many of them were, as has been stated above³, more or less petrified 'typical similes'. Elsewhere mythology was source of images that served to extol, to honour, to praise, to compare with an ideal.⁴ Nala and Damayantī enjoy their honeymoon *like Indra and Śacī* (Nala 5, 43), Nala worships the gods *like Yayāti, Nahuṣa's son* (5, 44), cp. *ibid.* 26, 14. 33, 36; Satyavān is compared with Rantideva Śibi⁵, Yayāti, Soma (Sāv 2, 17) in answer to the question, whether he is liberal, religious etc. See also 7, 1, 47

¹ See e.g. DIETERICH, Abraxas, p. 136, n. 1.

² See e.g. M. MULLER, Über die Stilform der altdutschen Zaubersprüche bis 1300, Diss. Kiel 1901, § 8, especially p. 45.

³ See §§ 12, 48.

⁴ Cp. e.g. VĀMANA, Kāvya. 4, 2, 7a etc.

⁵ See also § 13

(long metre), 2, 35 (1 m.), 3, 15 *kuravah samtrasisyanti vajrapāner vāsuraḥ*, 6, 4, 7, 6, 52, 14, 48 f., 60 (1 m.), 19, 6, 26, 67 (1 m.), 4, 13, 13 *yuddham ghoram tayos .. | . vrtravāsavayor va*, 9, 17, 49¹, 10, 9, 8

In kāvya-works this kind of simile is well-known, Aśv. S 1, 61, 62, 6, 49 at the end of a canto, 1, 23-26, in which the poet shows his characteristic aptitude for unnatural redundancy by repetition of the same figure. See also Kāl Urv 4, 37, 5, 14, Māl 5, 17 seems to be an example of an ingenious, but artificial use Agnimitra and his son like Aurva and the waterconsuming fire, cp also Ragh. 15, 76 Of course these similes often add nothing to the meaning. Ragh. 15, 10; 40 Mere ornament e.g. Bhār. Kīr. 9, 22, 28.

§ 47 Bhāsa, Yaug 3, 8 Yaugandharāyana makes the solemn statement. *if the king does not carry her off, like Arjuna Subhadrā, or an elephant a lotus plant, my name is not Y*, a simile borrowed from ancient history. and another taken from nature have to strengthen Y's statement In solemn declarations similes may be almost comparable with the contents of *yathā*-sentences in adjurations and the like. Cp e.g. Nala 5, 17 ff. *vacasā manasā caiva yathā nāṭicarāmy aham | tena satyena vibudhās tam eva pradīśantu me*. 11, 38 *yathāham ... tathāyam patatām* ., Rām. 7, 97, 13 ff., Kāl Ragh 15, 81. A simile is used more than once in the form of an oath Homer, Il. 3, 295 ff. wine is poured out and the gods are invoked *ὀπότεροι πρότεροι ὑπερ ὄρκια πημήνεια* | *ὦδέ σφ' ἐγκέφαλος χαμάδις ἔτοι ὥς ὅδε οἶνος*, and with the Romans Liv 1, 24, 8 *Iuppiter populum Romanum sic ferito, ut ego hunc porcum hic hodie feriam* .², see also Polybius 3, 25, 6 ff. ... *ἐγὼ μόνος ἐκπέσοιμι οὕτως ὥς ὅδε λίθος νῦν*.³ The Bataks sometimes take an oath over the dead body of a frog, the perjurer will be crushed like that animal. We might compare maledictions with nothing but words, such as ... *mogen sie wie durres Kraut in Flammen lodern! mogen sie wie das Gras im Garten*

¹ Cp C. R. LANMAN, Sanskrit diction as affected by the interests of herdsman, priest, and gambler, JAOS. 20, p 12 sqq.

² As for the oath see e.g. R. HIRZEL, Der Eid, Leipzig 1902, HASTINGS' Encyclopaedia of Religion and Ethics svv Oath, Ordeal, SCHRAEDER-NEHRING, Reallexikon der indogermanischen Altertumskunde I, pp 226ff.

³ Quoted in full by SCHRAEDER-NEHRING, p. 229.

verdorren' (from an Italian popular song)¹ The blind man whose son has been killed by Daśaratha, curses him *yathāhaṃ bhoṣtvam apy evam putraśokād vipatsyase* (Bhāsa, Pratim 6, 15, cp. Rām 2, 64, 53 ff.), just as the maid, whose beloved had been murdered by her brothers, calls down the curse upon them. *may you all be unhappy in marriage*². Mbh 1, 118, 33 This sort of simile has a firm foundation in the human soul. In the same manner in the blessing at the end of a drama. Bhāsa, Pratim 7, 15 *yathā rāmaś ca jānakyā bandhubhiś ca samāgataḥ | tathā lakṣmyā samāyukto rājā bhūmim praśāstu naḥ* I refer also to the employment of a *yathā*-sentence Nala 21, 8 *yathāsau rathanirghoṣaḥ* . | *mamāhlādayate ceto Nala esa* .. In a confirmation of someone's words Nala 2, 18, cp. 17, 16; Mbh 7, 3, 19, Sāv. 6, 10, 14 (Mbh 3, 298, 10, 14), Rām. 4, 14, 15 f.; 2, 64, 40.

In uttering wise words or wisdom, gained in life, or experience, similes are occasionally used Bhāsa, Cār 1, 2 + the Jester says (pr.) *the young days of a house are like those of a man, subject to various circumstances, the ruin of your wealth .. lends a charm to your poverty like that of the moon when it loses all its light in the dark fortnight*. Manu 2, 112 *dharmārthau yatra na syātām ... | tatra vidyā na vaktavyā śubhaṃ bījaṃ ivosare*, 2, 94; 8, 95, 3, 179 *perish like . unburnt clay in water* Pañc I, 135 + (NS⁶, 1925, p 21) *phalenava jñāsyasi*, very concise. "you shall know (him like a tree) by its fruit", Nītiv. 72, 1 *rely upon officials is to be compared to appointing cats to watch over the milk*. Compare also Kāl. Ragh 2, 34³, 5, 54³.

§ 48. Now, we ought not to lose sight of the fact that these 'images' too are not always vivid ones. With regard to phenomena in languages that do not completely live for us we run the risk that we wish to understand the image too much to the letter. Once created and used frequently in every-day parlance similes as well as other 'images' are subject to wear and tear: they are apt to lose their character as images. So long as the speakers of the language are aware of the fact that they are speaking in

¹ BOCKEL, o.c., p. 302, who quotes LIZIO-BRUNO, *Canti pop. delle Isole Eolie*, nr. 97; p. 229.

² BOCKEL, o.c., p. 301, who quotes CHILD, *English and Scottish popular ballads*, III, 166.

³ See § 58 in fine.

images, and so long as their 'Gefühlswert' is different from the logical-intellectual expressions, so long frequent expressions such as *neth ik ben hier als een kat in een vreemd pakhuys*, *engl I feel like a fish out of water* must be called 'similes'. But in the same way as in colloquial speech words and combinations of words expressing an affirmation or a negation are subject to lose their expressivity and must be renewed at intervals (cp *neth hij is erg rijk hij is verschrakkelijk rijk*, but in the long run *verschrakkelijk* becomes merely an equivalent to *erg*, and then other terms are introduced, e g *hij is vies rijk* and the like), and in the same way as also the degrees of comparison are apt to become worthless¹, even so the frequent expressions which originally were real similes too used to lose their force and often become similes only in their outward appearance. And even when they possess in that very form a certain 'Gefühlswert' and may belong to a certain group of speakers or to the speech of a special community or to familiar speech or the like, nevertheless the image has receded into the back-ground. When neither the speaker nor the listener 'see' or imagine the image before them, expressions such as *neth wees er bij als de kippen*, *engl to tremble like an aspen-leaf*, *fr pleurer comme un veau, dormir comme une marmotte*, or with the natives of Flores *he is as ugly as a monkey*, are no longer real similes. This kind of expressions has become 'assez vite un moyen expressif parce qu'imagé, de marquer que la qualité observée dans un objet ou un être y existe à un degré éminent'² They are apt to become petrified, they become clichés, standing phrases; people that use them often do not borrow from their own experience, but 'live on' the experience of their ancestors³ Thus these similes pass into the general language⁴ As the proverb is a form of 'primitive Ökonomie der Lebenserfahrung'⁵, so by using petrified similes we ourselves may save brain-labour in speaking. When I wish to say to somebody, that he has to go quickly, and the adverbs *neth snel* and *vlug* ("quickly") do not

¹ See W. HAVERS, *Handbuch der erklärenden Syntax*, p. 161.

² FERD. BRUNOT, *La pensée et la langue*³, Paris 1936, p. 692.

³ For the predilection for standing phrases etc. in the 'Volkssprache' see FR. MAURER, in *Hessische Blätter für Volkskunde* 26 (1927), p. 165.

⁴ See also VAN DER MEULEN, o.c., p. 15.

⁵ R. M. MEYER, *Deutsche Stilistik*, p. 145.

seem to me to be adapted, then the *haas* ("hare"), *hazewind* ("greyhound"), *blisksem* ("lightning") will render me good services in a petrified simile ¹ Also will do 'proverbial similes'

Ath V. 11, 2, 13, it reads *paścād anuprayunkse tam viddhasya padanīr va*, translated by Whitney-Lanman² "him from behind thou pursuest, like the tracker (?) of one that is pierced", they compare 10, 1, 26 b "lead, as it were, the track of one stabbed" *viddhasyeva padam naya*, where³ they remark 'lead' appears to be used in the sense of 'follow', the 'track' is doubtless that of the maker", ad 11, 2, 13 they rightly remark that the expression is apparently a familiar or proverbial one. Indeed it occurs also in Manu, 8, 44 in a more extended form *yathā nayaty asrīkpātair mrgasya mrgayuh padam*, as a hunter follows the track of a (wounded) deer by the drops of blood, LANMAN⁴ also refers to Dhammapada vss 179 f — A daughter is a deposit guarded by the father to be made over to her husband see e.g. Mbh 1, 157, 35 *bhartur arthāya nīkṣiptām nyāsaṃ dhātṛā mahātmanā*, in the same way a kingdom may be compared with a deposit Kāl. Ragh 12, 18 Śak, 4, 22 by the skill of the poet the idea is revived having sent her (viz. Ś.) to her husband, Kaśyapa says *my soul is now serene pratyarpitanyāsa iva*, "as it is when a deposit is returned"

The venerable character of a proverb or adage may be accentuated by parallelism, responsio, rhyme etc ⁵ Bhāsa, Pratim 3, 23 *gopahīnā yathā gāvo vīlayaṃ yānty apālītāḥ | evaṃ nṛpatihīnā hi vīlayaṃ yānti vai prajāḥ*, a frequent comparison, "a people without a king is like cows without a herdsman," couched in the well-known long-winded form⁶. — Kāl., Māl. 2, 7 *even a stupid person becomes clever by association with the learned, as turbid water is made clear by contact with the fruit of the mud-destroying plant*, the *pankajid* is a tree whose fruit is used for clearing turbid water. Here the simile expresses experience perhaps still familiar to the poet's readers Harṣa, Nāg 5, 24 *the sin lost in goodness like a small particle of salt in ... a great lake*; individual exaggeration

¹ For 'images' in usage with Buddhists, M. WINTERNITZ, Geschichte der Indischen Litteratur, II, pp. 57ff.

² O.c., p. 622.

³ O.c., p. 566.

⁴ O.c., p. 622.

⁵ See my Stilistische Studie ..., p. 19.

⁶ See § 55.

of like salt in water.¹ Kāl Māl., 1, 8 the minister says: *Your Majesty says what is in keeping with the teaching of the Śāstras, for an enemy who has lately assumed the reins of government ... is very easy to extirpate, like a tree that has been planted newly*, this 'simile' has been elaborated by means of the explanation *prakṛtiṣv arūḍhamūlatvāt*², "inasmuch as it (viz. the tree) has not taken firm root" and, referring to the enemy, "inasmuch as he has not yet gained a firm hold on the affections of his subjects", besides, the wording of the verse is too careful and 'poetical' to be spontaneous speech.

It is worthy of note that an adage that has to prove the truth of a remark etc. has its natural place after that remark. Having noticed or determined a fact, we are apt to use it in a wider sense, to give a greater coherence to it. One way of doing this consists in formulating a general thought, but when we avoid thinking abstractly, it stands to reason that we prefer to use a concrete image instead of a general thought. Thus Bhāsa, Vās. 1, 4 formerly you obtained every desire, in the future it will be so once more *the worldly fortunes revolve .. like the spokes in a wheel*.

Now and then a comparison has been borrowed from a fable Mrcch. 1, 16 + (Vid., pr.)³, or from a story: Mbh. 13, 70, 31. This phenomenon also occurs in the case of other peoples.

§ 49. Human speech does not only serve to betray feelings and sensations and to express wishes, desires and the like, it has also another very important task: it has to be a vehicle of ideas and thoughts⁴. It is old wisdom that often a mixture of 'An-schaulichkeit' and abstract wording, interlarded with examples and similes, is the best method to explain more or less difficult things to a greater public. Pope Gregory the Great said with good reason that the mind of the hearers is often more struck by examples and stories about events in former times than by mere words. This word has been practiced by many a missionary and popular teacher⁵. Several authors have a special liking for similes in order to elucidate abstract ideas. "Während .. bei Schiller der

¹ Cp. ChUp. 6, 13, see § 50, p. 94.

² Compare Ragh. 8, 10.

³ See P. REGNAUD, *Le Chariot de terre cuite*, Paris 1876, a.l.; VOGEL, o.c., a.l.

⁴ See e.g. FR. PAULHAN, *La double fonction du langage*, Paris 1929.

⁵ E.g. in Africa, C. MEINHOF, o.c., p. 147.

Vergleich außer der Verdeutlichung dem sittlichen Pathos und dem Aufschwung ins Erhabene dient, ist er bei Lessing lediglich Mittel, und zwar oft und gern benutztes Mittel, Begriffe zu klären und zu verdeutlichen"¹. Authors of scientific works, who, in the main, strive after abstract speech and avoid images, at intervals use comparisons to set forth difficult argumentations or to throw light upon unknown facts in concise form thus when they compare the working of magic power with electricity or Indian history and historical personages with European history and persons: the Indian Tacitus, Nero, Philip II².

The Indians too knew from olden times that good but difficult lessons may be made interesting and intelligible by telling fables and parables and that short similes, drawn from the natural scenes and from every day life, and other suchlike expressions are capable of calling up in the memory familiar facts and events that may elucidate the subject matter of the teaching They knew that these similes throw light on that matter by way of analogy It must be added here that they are not only invented by teachers, but that a number of them is founded on popular wisdom (e.g. Mbh 12, 316, 19 f), on popular beliefs and institutions and on folk-ethics, e.g. the simile "which compares treachery to a friend with lopping off the branch that gives you shade."³ It is true that a good deal of these similes have an aesthetic effect too, that for instance the Buddhist parables and similes possess a "perennial charm which has won for the teachings of Gotama the Buddha their age-long hold over all the countries of their adoption"⁴ It is even true that for us these comparisons from the aesthetic standpoint are not less fascinating than from their didactic point of view But it is true just as well that the teachers and authors did not produce them with a view to creating things of beauty, — leaving out of the question a number of exceptions in certain texts.

As early as the Ath. V. there seems to exist an instance. 12, 4

¹ W. SCHNEIDER, *Ausdruckswerte der deutschen Sprache*, 1931, p. 74

² See H. GOETZ, *Epochen der indischen Kultur*, Leipzig 1929 *Omnis comparatio claudicat!* — The remarks of K. O. ERDMANN, *Die Bedeutung des Wortes*³, 1922, pp. 196ff. are worth reading

³ Mrs. RHYS-DAVIDS, *Buddhist parables and similes*, The Open Court, Sept. 1908, p. 531.

⁴ Idem, p. 524.

14 I like a deposited treasure (śevadhī-), so is the cow of the Brahman. As for the comparisons in the Taittirīya-Samhitā I can make use of the collection of the material made by KEITH in the introduction of his translation of this text¹. In this work 'all higher qualities of style' are missing, KEITH observes, "there is no trace of humour or pathos. The aridity of constant quibbles and meaningless explanations is relieved only by occasional, and always very brief, references to real life." In two parts of the Brāhmaṇa, however, the similes are more frequent, viz. in V, the Agnicayana, and in VII, 5 the Gavām ayana 5, 3, 10. 1 a familiar, at least well-known, every-day affair is used to set forth a part of the ritual *yat samyānir upadadhāti yathāpsu nāvā samyāty evam evantābhīr yajamāna imām lokānt sam yāti*, ... "like a person who takes to the water in a boat, even so with these the sacrificer goes to these worlds", an image frequently found in these texts. 6, 4, 11, 3 *yat tūsnīm pūrve grahā grhyante yathā tsārīyati mā ākha vyati nāparātsyāmīty upāvasrjaty evam eva tad*, "that the former cups are drawn silently, that is as when he (the hunter) lets go (his arrow, thinking) so far off is my mark ...". according to KEITH² the use of gesture in the teaching of the text, a fact proved beyond doubt by such passages as 5, 4, 3, 3, 4. By the side of this hunter's act (see also 5, 4, 10, 5 the awakening of a sleeping tiger), we find 7, 5, 3, 2 a comparison with *yathā—tādrk tat* borrowed from navigation. *bṛhat* and *rathantara* are like a boat on the shoreless ocean. *yathā madhye samudrasya plavam anvarjeyus tādrk tat*³, with repetition of the verb. More concise is also 5, 4, 10, 2 *yāvān evāgnis tam yunakti yathānaso yukta ādhīyata evam eva tat*, "he yokes the fire in its whole extent, that is as when something is placed on a yoked cart", 7, 2, 2, 3 *yathā dugdhām upasīdaty evam uttamam ahaḥ syāt*, "as when a man sits down to a cow that has already been milked", 5, 5, 7, 4 *sa yathā vyāghrah kruddhas tisthaty evam vaisa etarhi*. The parallelism is noteworthy, e.g. 7, 5, 9, 2 *yathā bandhān mumucānā utkrodam kurvata evam eva tad yajamānā utkrodam kurvata*.

¹ A. B. KEITH, *The Veda of the Black Yajus School* ... (Harvard Or. Ser. 18, 1914), pp. CLVIII

² O.c., p. CLVIII.

³ Cp. Jaim. Br. no 113, the whole passage CALAND's translation (J. B. in *Auswahl*, Akad. v. Wetensch. Amsterdam, 1919), p. 126.

Less pronounced 7, 5, 6, 2 *yathā dr̥tir upanaddho v̥pataty evaṁ samvatsaro v̥ pated*¹, 7, 5, 8, 5 (the flying upwards of a bird)

Although the similes to be gathered from the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa are few in number², I am able to quote some fine instances of a didactic nature 6, 35, 11 *yathā ha vā idam ano 'purogavam riṣyaty evaṁ haiva yajño 'daksino riṣyati*, "as in this world a waggon without a leader comes to grief, so a sacrifice without a fee given to the priests comes to grief", it is noteworthy that the preceding words *daksinā var yajñānām purogavi* contain an equalization "the fee is the leader of the sacrifices", so, in the comparison it is not a fee that is compared with the leader of a waggon, but a leader of a sacrifice who is compared with an ordinary leader Elsewhere too similes go side by side with equalizations, see 6, 9, 7 *yajamānam .. garbham bhūtam* 6, 31, 2 *sa yathā garbho yonyām antar evaṁ sambhavañ chete* 6, 21, 10 we find two similes in a less pronounced parallelism (opt indic) the sailing in a ship. the celebrating of certain sacrifices, ship *triṣṭubhah*, but 6, 6, 6, the verses are ships that lead to heaven (see also 7, 13, 6). With *yathā — tādr̥k tat* 6, 23, 8 Shorter similes 6, 18, 11, 21, 14 *indram evantābhīr n̥hvayante yatha ṛṣabham vāṣitāyari*, "Indra they summon, as a bull calls to a cow", in 22, 9 in a more extended form *yatha ṛṣabho vāṣitām yathā vā gauḥ prajñātam goṣṭham evaṁ haisām Indro yajñam arva gachati*, here of course the character of the simile is not only didactic, but also emotional. See also 6, 3, 1, 7, 26, 5 (2 ×)

In other Brāhmaṇas too similes referring to events in everyday life play the part of elucidating, nay, conclusive arguments. See for instance Jaim. Br. no 164³, no 34 end "as if one should fall in a hole" *yat pade antarāvānyād yathā kartam patet tādr̥k tat*, no 88 as live coals poured out into a vessel The same thing occurs more than once: a bag of leather no 130 beg., 164 (3 ×), images borrowed from travelling (see above) no 168, etc. — See also no 4; 103 beg., 130, 220. — From nature and hunting no

¹ See KEITH, o c., p 623, n. 4

² See also H. OLDENBERG, Zur Geschichte der altindischen Prosa, Abh. Ges. d. Wiss. zu Göttingen. Ph hist Kl., NF XVI, 6, 1917, p. 19, A B KEITH, R̥gveda Brahmanas (Harvard Or. Ser., 25, 1920), p. 97.

CALAND's translation (Das J.-B. in Auswahl), p. 212 top

164 (p 213) *the sacrifice is like a hare, yo va' śasam utsargam lipsate, nainam sa grhñāti* etc.¹ Borrowed from 'technics' no 112, 131, 140, 168, 179 No 117 *like a husband visiting his wives, so the sun visits the quarters of the sky every one in its turn*², the comparison elucidates and places the sphere on a human plane No 88 end we find a concrete image to make clear a metaphor³. *as on a mountain a light shines, so it 'shines' for him. who knows thus.* That both teachers and hearers were aware of the fact that similes are capable of giving instruction appears from the interesting no 168, where Ahina teaches his sons, they say that he teaches, so to speak, in an unintelligible way (*parokṣeneva*), and they add *tathā no nuśādhi yathedam vjāniyāmeti*, "instruct us in such a manner that we may understand it" Thereupon he elucidates the matter he has already communicated and adds to his explanations a number of similes⁴.

Sometimes 'objective teaching' was appreciated. no 90 tries to solve a theological riddle in this way. One day, when the Kurus and the Pañcālas were discussing a 'riddle from the Veda' (*brahmodya-*), they saw a dog, which was lying down, rolled up. They said: "in this (dog), indeed, must lie for us the decision" Now the P asked the K: "what of him resembles the sacrifice?" (*kim asya yaṅṅasyeveti*), etc.⁵

§ 50 It is almost superfluous to say that the Upaniṣads contain many instances of elucidating and didactic similes⁶. a good many of them are known even to many people who are not able to read the original texts. *Ātman has entered this world like a razor placed in a razor-case or like visvambhara (a certain animal?) in its dwelling* (BĀU. 1, 4, 7), *as all the spokes are fastened in the nave⁷ and the circumference of the wheel, so all beings, all gods etc are fastened in that ātman* (id 2, 5, 15), *as the spider proceeds, along with its web, as little sparks proceed from fire, so from that ātman*

¹ See CALAND, p 213.

² See the entire passage, CALAND, pp. 130-132.

³ See § 62, p. 114.

⁴ See CALAND's translation, pp. 222ff

⁵ See CALAND's translation, p. 100.

⁶ See KEITH, *The Religion and Philosophy of the Veda and Upaniṣads*, p. 506.

⁷ See e.g. SENART, in his translation, Paris 1934, p. 11.

⁸ See also ChU. 7, 15, 1.

all organs etc proceed (id. 2, 1, 20). *the world comes forth from ātman as the sound from the drum, when it is beaten or from the conch-shell, when it is blown*¹.

Most of the similes to be found in these texts belong to this kind, although now and then also quite natural expressions make clear to us that not only difficult lessons and doctrines, but also simpler things are explained by means of a simile, see e.g. ChU. 5, 1, 8², — and, on the other hand, human feelings and magic seem to play a part too. ChU. 1, 2, 7 *f the asuras approached it and were destroyed as is a clod of clay struck against a rock, (repeated), so he will perish who* Most of these elucidating similes are rather concise. ChU. 1, 4, 3 *as one discovers a fish in water, so . . .*, 2, 23, 4, 4, 1, 4, 14, 3; 5, 24, 1, 7, 3, 1, 8, 6, 2, 8, 12, 3.

Somewhat longer is ChU 4, 17, 7f *tad yathā lavanena suvarnam sandadhyāt suvarnena rajatam rajatena trapu .. evam esām lokānām āsām devatānām .. vīryena yajñasya vīriṣtam sandadhāti*, see also 6, 7, 3 and 5 f.; 6, 8, 2, 6, 9, 1 f. (2 × *yathā — evam*) The most extended simile in ChU. is 6, 14, 1f : *as a man with his eyes bandaged is carried away from Gandhāra and left in a lonely place ... and thereupon a person unties the bandage and says. This is the way to G. . . and that man ... reaches G at last, so a man who has a guru etc* As has been noticed by OLDENBERG³ this simile is almost a short narration, but the outward appearance of a comparison *yathā, yathā, yathā — evam eva* has been maintained. „Eigentliche Erzählungen, die sich zu einer wenn auch mäßigen Länge ausdehnen, wie in den buddhistischen Texten oder dem Neuen Testament finden sich unter den Gleichnissen der Upanishaden kaum. Den literarischen Gewohnheiten dieses Altertums war es offenbar noch fremd, ein bloßes Gleichnis zu solcher Dimension und solcher Selbständigkeit anwachsen zu lassen.“⁴ To my mind, OLDENBERG says with good reason⁵ that „die Gleichnisse ... gewiß .. der Verkündigung vom All-Einen nicht allein als

¹ See H. OLDENBERG, Die Lehre der Upanishaden und die Anfänge des Buddhismus², Göttingen 1923, p. 71.

² Cp §§ 1ff.

³ OLDENBERG, Die Lehre der Upanishaden, p. 159, n. 3. See also further on, Mbh. 12, 262, 22f.

⁴ OLDENBERG, o.c., p. 159, whose remarks pp. 157ff. are worth reading.

⁵ O.c., p. 157.

Schmuck (dienten), sondern auch die Bestimmung (hatten), die Überzeugungskraft der Rede zu verstärken, instead of "auch", however. I should like to read "in erster Linie"¹ Lastly, I recall to mind the interesting passage ChU 6, 13, where Śvetaketu has to immerse salt in water and the dissolving of the salt leads to a discussion the well-known simile BĀU 2, 4, 12 in a dramatic form² This 'Inszenierung von Gleichnissen'³ is found also in Buddhist texts⁴, it is teaching by illustration

§ 51 It is, indeed, a well-known fact that Buddhist literature contains many similes and parables, fables and narratives, between which no hard and fast line is to be drawn And this fact is in concert with what might have been expected in the first centuries of its being this literature existed and grew principally in the mouths and ears of teachers and listeners and in the memories of its compilers⁵ "I have made a simile for you that you may understand what I mean", "by means of a simile many a wise man understands the meaning of the argumentation" are sayings of the Buddha, who was perfectly acquainted with the fact that hearts and minds of his hearers were much more pervious to his teachings when they were couched in images and similes than to logical demonstrations

For lack of space I must confine myself to referring in the main to the books and papers quoted in the note, I only wish to emphasize the fact that very often these Buddhist similes are broadly elaborated and made into real parables, told in a lively and illustrative way and are more than once couched in the form of dialogue. Not natural, but artificial is for instance Vinayapitaka, Cull. 9, 1, 3 f, where we find an eightfold and carefully elaborated

¹ See also OLDENBERG, Buddha, 1921, p. 36: "Immer neue poetische Wendungen werden versucht, immer neue Gleichnisse ersonnen, das Rätsel des Ātman zu deuten"

² Cp. Maury Up. 6, 35, 7, 11

³ OLDENBERG, p. 159, n. 2.

⁴ Cp. e.g. Samyutta Nikāya, V, p. 437 f.

⁵ For similes and parables in Buddhist literature, see Mrs. RHYS-DAVIDS, Similes in the Nikāyas, a classified index, Journal of the Pāli Text Society, 1906-1907, pp. 52 sqq, with addenda, Ibidem 1908, pp. 180 sqq, idem, Buddhist parables and similes, The Open Court, Chicago, 22 (9), Sept. 1908, pp. 522 ff, H. OLDENBERG, Buddha, passim, especially pp. 215ff; M. WINTERNITZ, Geschichte der Indischen Literatur II, passim.

comparison between the eight properties of the ocean with those of the Buddhist doctrine and order *as the ocean has only one taste, viz the taste of salt, thus our religion has only one taste, the taste of final emancipation*, etc. It goes without saying that in Buddhist similes too nature plays an important part, it may be seen from the texts, "how naturally the imagery used by him (viz. Buddha) springs from the scenes that will have met his eye"¹ the monk who has subdued his senses sits down *like a lion in its den*, the wise man is *like a firm rock* or *like an elephant*, etc. etc. But now and then we meet with 'figures' that do not belong to spontaneous speech e.g. an abundance of similes such as in Therīg 112 ff. From the Dhammapada, where many instances of various kinds of similes are to be found (cp. e.g. 81 *as a solid rock is not shaken by the wind, wise people do not falter amidst blame and praise*; 91 *like swans having left their lake, they leave hearth and home*; 334 *the thirst of a thoughtless man grows like a creeper, he runs from life to life, like a monkey which seeks fruit in the forest*) I quote as a 'didactic' simile 338 *as a tree is firm so long as its root is unhurt and grows again, so, unless the feeders of thirst are destroyed this pain (of life) will return* . . In the same way in other Buddhistic works the subject-matter is made clear, lively and intelligible by similes, parables in the outward appearance of narrations, more than once they are elaborated very broadly. But WINTERNITZ is in the right, when, in reference to the Saddharma-pundarika, he says² "Noch schöner waren alle diese Gleichnisse, wenn sie nicht mit solcher Breite und Weitschweifigkeit ausgeführt waren", as for instance the parable of the man, blind-born³ In the Milindapañña, especially in the second book, many elucidating similes are to be found. In the second part of the work, however, they have a highly artificial character. the greater part of the fifth book is one long and elaborated simile: Buddha who has founded his religion is compared to an architect who builds up a city.

That orthodox philosophy⁴ and the Jainas too did not despise to elucidate their texts with similes has already been set forth

¹ Mrs. RHYS DAVIDS, Open Court, p. 527

² WINTERNITZ, o.c., p. 234.

³ See, in KERN's translation, p. 129.

⁴ I refer to R. GARBE, Die Sāmkhya-Philosophie², 1917, pp. 220ff

sufficiently by others¹. Now, although similes may be acceptable and appreciated expedients in explaining instructional subject matter, it stands to reason that, on the other hand, too great a number of images will often be detrimental to an exact intellectual understanding. People that try to understand the truth intuitively, however, like to make use of them all the same. In this manner the 'didactic' simile more than once develops into a vague and symbolic expression that may be more or less poetical. Then a simile has to bridge a cleft in the logical reasoning. Ingeniousness and poetical skill obtain superiority over the true and enlightening naturalness of the older instances.²

§ 52. I must change the subject. We are not surprised to see that also the authors of Dharmaśāstras and the like occasionally make use of such similes. See e.g. Vas Dh. ś 8, 14–16, Manu, 7, 105 *a king has to secure 'the members of his government' as the tortoise hides its limbs* (= Mbh 12, 83, 49, 140, 24), 2, 88 *a wise man should keep his organs in check .. like a charioteer his horses*; 2, 99 *a man's prajñā slips away just as the water (flows) through the one (open) foot of the bag (of a water-carrier)*³. These *iva*-similes, however, can from another point of view be counted among other 'groups'. typical, proverbial, 'anschaulich', intensifying. Likewise in the Mbh.⁴, e.g. 12, 215, 24 ... *śanair agnim ivendhayet | jñānānvitam*, "gradually like a fire one should inflame him who is accompanied by knowledge." Some of these short similes are perhaps a concise form of a more complete one: cp. 14, 19, 12 *śanair nirvāṇam āpnoti | nirindhana vānalah*.⁵ But undoubtedly to the 'didactical similes' (with *yathā* — *tathā*) belong e.g. BhG. 2, 22, with repetition of the same words. *vāsāṃsi jīrṇāni yathā vīhāya | navāni grhṇāti naro 'parāni | tathā śarīrāni vīhāya jīrṇāny anyāni saṃyāti navāni dehī*; rhymed 12, 216, 6 *lohayuktam yathā hema vipakvaṃ na virājate | tathāpakvakaṣāyākhyam vijñānam na prakāśate*, one of those images, the demonstrative force of which cannot but be understood intuitively. Sometimes

¹ E.g. WINTERNITZ, o.c., II, p. 297.

² See also OLDENBERG, Die Lehre der Upanishaden ..., pp. 178–223. Die Anfänge des Sāmkhyasystems.

³ See BÜHLER's translation, SBE. vol. 25, p. 48, note.

⁴ I refer to O. STRAUSS, Ethische Probleme aus dem M., Estratto dal Giornale della Società Asiatica Italiana, 24 (1911), p. 202 (10)

⁵ A usual image, see also e.g., Aśv. S. 14, 8.

we meet with a complete simile, whereas elsewhere the same or a similar idea is expressed by a short saying, e.g. 12, 214, 21 *payasy antarhitaṃ sarpir yadvan nirmathyate khajaiḥ | śukram nirmathyate tadvad dehasaṃkalpajaiḥ khajaiḥ*, cp 318, 33, 247, 15 At the same time plastic e.g. BhG. 2, 70 with poetical wording *āpūryamānam acalapratistham | samudram āpah pravṛṣanti yadvat | tadvat kāmā yam pravṛṣanti sarve | sa śāntim āpnoti na kāmakāmī* A longer *yathā*-protasis occurs e.g. 12, 174, 15, the same subject in a still longer form 12, 262, 22 f, almost a short narrative¹ — In Purāṇa's Mārkaṇḍeya 11, 6; cp also 68, 22 f

When we peruse some *kāvyā*-poems we find instances as well. Aśv., in his *Saund.*, has a predilection for them, which is quite comprehensible from the character of the work With *iva* e.g. *Saund.* 14, 7, 8, 15 *food supports the body, like a prop a ramshackle dwelling that is about to collapse*, 39, 47; 48 Two illustrating *iva*-sentences S 14, 36 With *responsio* 14, 38 A *yathā*-protasis, followed by *tadvat* —, instructing with an example. S. 11, 24 *yathāśanāṛtham skandhena kaścid gurvīm śilām vahet | tadvat tvam api ...*, 25, 27; 29 *like a man who looking for honey, overlooks the precipice*, to which the narrative Mbh 5, 64, 16 ff is to be compared, and also Mbh. 12, 309, 7 *madhu paśyasi durbuddhe prapātaṃ nānupaśyasi*, from which it appears that the simile was a familiar one², 14, 11; 12³; more extended 11, 60, two *yathā*-sentences, followed by *tadvat*, with some *responsio*, S 13, 4-6, a construction which in this form is only possible in careful speech With *yathā* — *tathā* S 11, 26; 28, 59, longer 14, 18 f.

That the poet may employ this figure to deepen and vary the thought, we see Bc 6, 41 f.: 44 *svajanam yady api snehān na tyajeyam mumukṣayā | mṛtyur ... samtyājayisyati*, 46 *vāsavṛkṣe samāgamya vṛgacchanti yathāṇḍajāḥ | nyatam viprayogāntas tathā bhūtasamāgamah*, here the image explains the thought which is kept on a general plane: death will separate all men from one another; in 47 another example is added: *sametya ca yathā bhūyo vyapayānti valāhakaḥ | samyogo viprayogaś ca tathā me prāṇinām matah*; this addition is meant to show that all things in the world

¹ See above, p. 93 à propos of ChU. 6, 14, 1f.

² JOHNSTON noted it nine times in the Mbh., see E. H. JOHNSTON, *The Saundarananda ... translated*, London 1932, p. 63, note.

³ See JOHNSTON, o.c., p. 77, note.

are subject to separation, and consequently man too — Kāl, Śak. 2, 9 +, after a lyrical strophe said by the king the vidūsaka intends to explain his conduct to him, he uses an image borrowed from his own sphere of interest (pr) *just as one that has lost relish for dates may have a desire for tamarind, so is this longing of yours, who are scorning the beautiful ladies (of your palace)*, here this kind of simile has been adapted in a skilful manner to the context and to its character as a part of a stage-play Quite natural in itself, but, of course, clothed and expressed in 'poetical' language is Urv 4, 33. where Purūravas, seeing an antelope, asks it, if it has seen Urvaśī and for the sake of clearness, he adds *she glances as gracefully as your mate does with her large eyes*¹ An added explanation, Śak 7, 31 A substantiating example · Bhār. Kir. 11, 55

§ 53 As I have already remarked above², now and then a simile is a strengthening addition. It may act as an example with intensifying function. AV. 9, 2, 6 e.g. we find such a simile, which, moreover, builds on upon a popular image. *with the strength of Kāma I thrust forth my rivals, as a skilful śambhin-(punter?) a boat on the water.* AV 11, 4, 19 the simile is a repetition and at the same time an enlargement of the preceding verse. (18) *to him who knows this . . all shall pay tribute . .*, (19) *as ... all . . are tribute-bearers to thee, so shall they bring t. to him ... (yathā — evā)*

It is, however, often not easy to say, whether the presence of such a simile has been brought about by a tendency to intensify, or by a longing for a pleasant association, which makes the mind of hearers and readers linger and dwell on the subject⁴. Nala 11, 36 *sa tu pāpamatih kṣudrah pradharṣayitum āturah | durdharṣām tarkayāmāsa dīptām agniśikhām iva*, in my opinion, the simile, in the first place intensifies, but Mbh. 12, 331, 3 this seems to be certain only in a smaller degree. *rujanti hi śārīrāṇi rogāḥ śārīra-mānasāḥ | sāyakā iva tikṣṇāgrāḥ prayuktā dṛdhadhanvabhīḥ*, the two words in d, p.d. perhaps betray the desire to amplify, for its

¹ See also §§ 2; 3.

² See § 14.

³ Cp. WHITNEY-LANMAN, o.c., p. 522.

⁴ I refer to the remarks of BETTY HEIMANN, Studien zur Eigenart Indischen Denkens (1930), pp. 17f.

own sake and the pleasure to dwell on the association conjured up by the image. The amplification may be longer, e.g. Mbh. 7, 3, 16 *trāsaiṣṣyanti . kurūn | samiddho 'gnir yathā vīra mahā-jvālo drumān dahet*. Here one has a still greater right to expect the longing of dwelling on the association which has been conjured up. See also Mbh. 7, 16, 3 *tasya dīptā mahābānā viniśceraḥ sahasraśaḥ | bhānor va mahārāja gharmakāle marīcayah*, 54 (end of an adhyāya). Now and then the simile is a complete 'picture' showing many detailed associations with that which has been compared, e.g. 4, 13, 10 *tāv ubhau sumahotsāhāv ubhau tivrāparākramaḥ | mattāv va mahākāyau vāraṇau samnīpetatuḥ*, cp. e.g. 7, 14, 61, 25, 48, Bhāsa, Abhis. 6, 11 d. But also a short simile may be capable of making our mind linger. Mbh. 12, 27, 30¹ *saṃyogā viprayogāntā jātānām prāṇnām dhruvam | budbudā va toyesu bhavanti na bhavanti ca*.

Amplifications² are not rare in the works of Bhāsa. Yaugh 4 13 .. *bhujagam va saroṣaṃ dharṣitaṃ cocchritaṃ ca*, 15 with rhyme *guror avajitaṃ hatvā śāntam drauṇam va sthitaṃ*, Vāsav 5, 1 d, Abhis. 2, 8 d. Yaugh 2, 10 *let my people see the king, my enemy, as a captive, 'while anger is within him', like a lion captured for a sacrifice*, here we find an amplification of *as angry as a lion*, and the emotions aroused by the image are quite in concert with the circumstances.

Such a use of similes may give rise to more or less independent amplifications. Rām 4, 35, 6 ff. Tārā excuses Sugrīva because of his joy he has not noticed how the time passed: .. *prāp-takālam na jānīte*, but here she adds a comparison: *viśvāmitro yathā munīḥ || ghṛtācyām kila saṃsakto daśa varsāni ... | aho 'manyata . . viśvāmitro ... || sa hi prāptaṃ na jānīte kālam .. | v .. kiṃ punar yah prthagjanāḥ*, with the last words she recurs to her subject.

From these and similar examples it becomes clearer to us than from a good many of the other similes discussed so far, that also in Sanskrit literature many similes are of a nature, "daß sie ein Motiv aus der Erzählung ... aufnehmen und in einer andern Sphäre wiederholen, wie im Orchester, wo die Flöte in andrer

¹ = BOETLINGK, Indische Sprüche², no. 6625

² See also § 54.

Tonlage ein Motiv wiederholt, das die Violine angab" ¹ But similes such as Rām 4, 35, 6 ff, viz independent or 'Homeric' similes, are rare in Sanskrit ² Mbh 12, 316, 22 f we meet with a comparison which occurs not only in Sanskrit literature ³ *tarlapā-traṃ yathā pūrṇaṃ karābhyāṃ grhya puruṣaḥ | sopānam āruhed bhīta tarjyamāno 'śvānibhīḥ || samyatātmā bhayāt teṣāṃ na pātrād bīndum utsrjet | tatharvottaram āgamyā ekāgramanasas tathā || sthīratvād indriyānāṃ tu nīcalatvāt tatharva ca | evaṃ yuktasya tu muner laksanāny upalaksayet* This is an amplification into an independent 'picture' of the elucidating and didactic simile. ⁴ In a more concise form 12, 321, 8 Cp Uttarar. 4, 15.

Mostly the sphere is one with which the hearers are more intimate animals Mbh. 7, 14, 67, 15, 31, 18, 26, 21, 2, 22, 14, nature 7, 15, 26, 35; 36; 16, 4, 10, 21, 30, 20, 57.

§ 54. Of course these similes are at the same time plastic. Not unfrequently such a simile may be said to make the emotions more lasting and intense, to deepen the thoughts that arise in our minds and especially the feelings that are awakened in our hearts. See e.g. BhG. 2, 67 *indriyāṇāṃ hi caratāṃ yaṃ mano 'nuvī-dhīyate | tad asya harati prañāṃ vāyur nāvam vām̐bhasi*, 15, 8. See also e.g. Mbh 7, 8, 27

This deepening may of course also be effected by repeating the image and by adding another. ⁵ Mbh. 7, 5, 8 f. *na vinā nāyakam senā ... tiṣṭhati | āhaveṣu ... netr̥hīneva naur jale || yathā hy akar-ṇadhārā nau rathas cāsārathir yathā | ... tadvat syād r̥te senāpatiṃ balam*. Or by an amplified repetition of the image Mbh 7, 14, 1 f. *vyacarat p̥rtanāṃ droṇo dahan kakṣam ivānalah || nirdahantam anikāni sāksād agniṃ vottithitam | dṛṣṭvā rukmaratham kruddham ...* See also 7, 26, 8 f. ⁶

Vālmiki and later poets often make use of this aspect of the simile See for instance Rām. 4, 24, 16: Sugrīva in despair cries

¹ H. FRANKEL, Die homerischen Gleichnisse, Göttingen, 1921, p. 1.

² For the Mbh. see OLDENBERG, Mahabharata, p. 166.

³ Compare Malay *seperti menatang minyak yang penoeḥ*, "as one carries a bowl full of oil", usually a simile for assiduous care and attention

⁴ See §§ 49ff.

⁵ See § 35.

⁶ Cp. MEINHOF, Dichtung der Afrikaner, p. 65: *Ich werde angreifen wie ein Löwe, wie der Löwe der die Mädchen verschlingt*; JASTROW, o.c., I, p. 455.

out a great distress overwhelms me like rain that falls down in torrents in a deep plain, here a scene of an inundation-calamity looms up in our minds Ibid 18 It is a proof of the high poetical ability of Kālidāsa that he knows how to exploit the possibilities that lie in this kind of simile Ragh 16, 45 *the day of which the heat increased and the night attenuated both looked like husband and wife estranged on account of conduct that was offensive to each other, but smitten with remorse afterwards*,¹ 16, 70.² a very significant simile is 2 16³ Ragh 15, 54 Rāma joins the company of Agastya who met him as the autumnal season the moon. R is compared to autumn on account of his amiable qualities⁴, 58 (they) showered presents on Rāma like clouds that pour down rain-water on the standing crops, 103, 16, 2, 38; 68, 2, 20, Śak 5, 11 Hyperbolically Ragh 15, 60 Ayodhyā with its four gates the four-faced Brahmā, 15, 10, 16, 79. cp Urv 4 40 — Kāl Māl 3, 4 *the spring . has made the southern wind, fragrant with mango-blossoms, pass along my body with agreeable touch like the palm of a hand*

In a more ingenious kind in the fore-part of the verse an introduction to the simile is found Ragh 15, 16 *dhūmadhūmro vasā-gandhī jvālābabhruśīroruhah | kravyādganaparivāras citāgnir iva jangamah*, the image is, as it were, a summary at the same time See also 1, 13 As the poet describes the mental derangement of Purūravas who has lost Urvaśī, he makes him identify a rivulet with her, here the same kind of simile is employed, in a natural and at the same time highly artistic manner "since this rivulet having the waves for frowning eye-brows (*tarangabhrūḥhangā*), the . birds for the jingling belt etc moves crookedly , I am sure that it is she transformed into a stream" (Urv 4, 28). Sometimes it may be said that in the image the idea is fully developed Śak 7, 15 Dusyanta, after having seen his son, says "this boy appears to me to be the seed of a mighty energy", and in the second part of the verse he adds *remaining like fire, in the condition of a spark waiting for fuel (to blaze up)*, which means "the noble birth and the excellent character of the boy are apparent, he has only to become full-grown, well-instructed and the like to show all his

¹ See e g KALE, The Raghuvamśa of Kālidāsa, IV (1930), pp. 158f

² Ibid , p. 164.

³ See KALE, o c., I, p 43.

⁴ See also ibid , III, p. 135.

first-rate qualities" Employed in an individual way Māl 1, 22 in an *ankāvatāra* (the hinting at the opening lines of the succeeding act at the end of the previous one) *this sound of music of the tambourine is as if it were the sound of my desire* ... In these instances the simile is made in the same mood, leads to deeper understanding of the situation, co-ordinates, expresses poetical imagination.

§ 55 Here there is room for a more systematic, although short, review of the outward appearance of the simile¹, in as far as it fits in with the rest of this treatise

The *yathā* — *tathā*² and *yadvat* — *tadvat*-similes, which, on the whole, are less frequent than the *yathā* — *evā* (*evam*)-similes, show complete similarity or resemblance in manner. See for instance AV. 5, 8, being an incantation against enemies, invoking the assistance of Indra and other gods³, 5c it reads ... *be he under your feet, o Indra*, and further 8 *as I. put U under his feet, so (in the same way) I put them down*; here a mythic event is been made active⁴; 3, 9, 1 *yathābhīcakra devās tathāpa kṛṇutā punah*⁵.

The *yathā* — *evā*⁶ (*evam*)-simile seems to express in the first place agreement in essence, which may even develop into complete identity. In this kind of similes, whether they are 'didactic', or 'ritualistic' or used otherwise, the *yathā*-protasis as a rule⁷ occupies the first place; the apodosis is usually a complete sentence. In the magical texts of the AV etc. these similes are found in exactly formulated sentences, being employed consciously to exercise, whether or not in harmony (at least as far as we can prove) with the ritual, an incantating effect, on the one hand an event in cosmic, ritual or divine sphere (in the *yathā*-protasis), on the other the object or aim of the incantation (in the apodosis) are put in parallelism⁸. The verb of the apodosis is generally an imper., sometimes an indic., rarely an optat., once in a

¹ For the Rgveda. OLDENBERG, Rg-Veda Noten, Indices, may be consulted.

² *yathā* + opt is left out of account (AV. 4, 8, 6; 5, 29, 3).

³ See above, § 44.

⁴ See § 45.

⁵ For AV. 4, 5, 5, see WHITNEY-LANMAN, o.c., p. 152

⁶ The word *eva* singly AV 5, 2, 9b = RV. 10, 120, 9b

⁷ Cp. RV. 8, 38, 9.

⁸ The texts RV. 5, 78, 7; 8; 8, 47, 17; 10, 60, 8; 9 are magical too, not 'poetical', as HIEZEL, o.c., p. 30, n. 16 says. See also BERGAIGNE, Mél Rénier, p. 76, n. 1

way *yathā* is repeated to introduce another upamāna. A social event is found only AV 6, 46, 3 (= RV. 8. 47. 17. the only passage that occurs also in R V. the paying off of a debt) and 6, 70, 1 (gambling-board), and 3 (the parts of a wheel), man 6, 70, 1-3. I shall give some examples. The ritual prescript belonging to AV 1, 3, viz Kauś. 25, 10 ff, is also clear enough, although in particulars there are difficulties¹ against obstruction of urine one has to open the 'way of the urine' (see Kauś. 25, 15 f) by means of a little metal bar, as appears from Keśava's paddhati. Now, the text to be recited (*abhimantrya*, Keśava) during that act, viz AV. 1, 3, consists of a five-fold *vidmā śarasya pītaram* which means. "we know (consequently we possess) the origin (consequently the essence) of the reed"², this "implies some primitive form of a fistula urinaria, the *vastriyantra* of the later physicians"³, then a verse (6), in which the urine is commanded to be released: *evā te mūtram mucyatām*, followed by (7) *I split up thy urinator like the dam of a tank . .* and (8) *unobstructed be the orifice of your bladder like [that] of a water-holding sea*, to which, at both times the command *evā te m m* (6) is repeated, these similes doubtlessly accompany an act performed with the little metal bar, and in the end (9) *yathesukā parāpatad avasrstādhi dhanvanah evā te mūtram mucyatām*, "as the arrow flew forth, shot off from the bow, — so etc.", here the swiftness of the arrow is to be transferred to the urine, as appears from Kauś. 25, 14, where a 'Vorbildzauber' is prescribed in the ritual: *iṣum visrgati*. That this arrow should be shot off bhayotpādanāya, "to cause fear", as is the opinion of Dārila⁴, seems to me to be only plausible as a reinterpretation.

I beg leave to dwell upon this subject. Not unfrequently in the ritual, as far as we know it, no corresponding acts are prescribed. E.g. 6, 105, consisting of three stanzas, to get rid of cough *as the mind* (1, *the . . arrow* 2; *the rays of the sun* 3) *fles (fly) away swiftly, so do you, o cough, fly forth . .* It does not appear from Kauś. 31, 27 and 28, 15 f. that the said acts were performed as 'Vorbild-

¹ See CALAND, ad Kauś. p. 69, n. 7 (Altindisches Zauberritual, Verh. Kon. Akad. v. Wet., Amsterdam, Afd. Lett., 1900).

² See my Stilistische studie over Atharvaveda I-VII, 1938, pp. 48; 81.

³ WHITNEY-LANMAN, o.c., p. 3.

⁴ See BLOOMFIELD's edition of the Kauśikasūtra, JAOS. 14, 1890, p. 68.

zauber'. Moreover only 2 could be executed. Now, as Paipp has only 2I, it might be supposed that the shooting away of the cough with a swift arrow¹ accompanied by the words *yathā bānah susam-śitah parāpataty āśumat*, followed by *evā tvam kāse pra pata* has been the original nucleus of the magic act and spell and that 1 and 3 are amplifications.² Elsewhere, to be sure, the things with which the 'Vorbildzauber' is performed are mentioned in the ritual, but not in a corresponding way 6, 138, 5 (to make a man impotent) *as women split reeds . so I split your member*, the reed in Kauś. 48, 33, however, is not split. Here the ritual seems to be younger than the text,³ at least in this form.⁴ It seems not to be impossible that the text of the mantra too was originally different and that 4 and 5 belonged to a separate 'Vorbildzauber'. The absence of 5 in Paipp and its character as an intensifying amplification of 4 in Śaun. may point the same way.⁵

Often, however, we do not see any connection between the simile in the mantra and ritual acts 6, 70 e.g. (to attach a cow to her calf) we find three verses ending in *of a lustful man the mind is fixed on a woman so let thy mind be fixed on thy calf*, here the burden is preceded by respectively $3 \times$, $1 \times$, $3 \times$ *yathā*, the similes are rather obscure⁶, the meaning is that the cow should be drawn towards the calf as a lustful man to a woman, as the dice to the gambling-board, as a pair of amorous elephants to each other, as the parts of a wheel to each other. But also in those cases, where we are not able to prove a relation with ritual the connection between the upameya and the thing addressed exists more than once. See e.g. 5, 21, 4-6 where the war-drum is adjured to cause a panic amongst the foes *like the*

¹ Cp. Handwörterbuch des deutschen Aberglaubens, VII, 1070.

² AV. 7, 13 we have, in my opinion, an instance of the magical effect of the glancing at a person, Kauś. 48, 35f. the user of verse 2 has to look at his enemies and to say *just as the rising sun takes away the tegāmsi of sleepers* (see also vs 1), *so I .. that of those who hate me*.

³ See CALAND, ad Kauś. p. 170, n 18 "das Rohr verdankt seine Anwesenheit in diesem Ritual offenbar nur den Worten des Liedes "as women . etc." "

⁴ I refer to OLDENBERG, Religion des Veda, p 480, n 3 Another such 'rite' in Egypt. M MEYERHOF, Beiträge zum Volkshelglauben .. Der Islam 7 (1917), p 313.

⁵ For AV 6, 72 s Kauś. 40, 16f see CALAND, ad Kauś. p 139, n. 9f.

⁶ I refer to the commentaries in the translations

wild beasts, all in a tremble at man —, like the birds . at the falcon —, like the goats and sheep at the wolf — three typical and objective examples of fear of a more powerful being, three-fold concrete and graphic variation of one idea serve to put the potency “do you, o drum alarm and frighten our enemies into the drum”¹ That this effect is attained, appears from vs 7, where the past tense is used “the gods have frightened our enemies away by the drum” See also 1, 11, 6², 6, 72, 102, 1, 139, 5³, 7 50, 5. Not only when animals stand in the *yathā*-protasis cosmical 1, 2, 4, gods and nature 6, 58, 2, gods 6, 74, 3, 85, 3, cp 141, 3; 4, 23, 2 As a principle of *sūkta*-building 6, 8 (3 stanzas), 70 (3 s); 105 (3 s) Compare also Mān G. S 1, 2, 13 *yathā dyauś ca prthivī ca na bibhīto na risyatah | evam me prāna mā bibha evam me prāna mā risah*, with AV 2, 15, 1, where in a *sūkta* against fear the first stanza “as both heaven and earth do not fear . . so my breath fear not” is followed by the couples day and night, brahma and *kṣatra* etc. in 2–6, and by seven other couples in Paipp⁴ In AV. the single verse has been repeated in a varied form, the power lying in the simile has been enhanced. 6 58 is interesting from the point of view of *sūkta*-building: 1a *yasasam mendro krnotu* — 2 *yathendro dyāvāprthivyor yaśasvān | evā yaśasah syāma* — 3 *yaśā indro .. ajāyata | yaśā . aham asmi yaśastamah*⁵, in st. 2, which contains the simile, magical power is transferred Another clear instance of this use of the *yathā* — *evā*-simile is 6, 74, one of the *sāmmaṇasyāni* (Kauś 12, 5); in 1b we read *sam manāmsi* ., “let your minds be together”, cp. 2a, in 3 the simile *yathādityā vasubhih sambabhūvur ... | evā .. imām janān sammanasas krdhīhi*⁶ In the same way 6, 85, 3, 141, 3, see also 1, 2, 4. In 6, 139, a *sūkta* to compel the love of a woman, we have in st 4 and 5, that are supernumerary⁷, *yathā* — *evā*-sentences

Repetition of the verb may be said to enhance the exactness of the wording. AV. 5, 25 is quoted in Kauś. 35, 5 in the ceremony for conception of a male child, in st. 2 it has *yatheyam prthivī*

¹ These *evā*-sentences are longer by one pāda than 1–3

² See WHITNEY-LANMAN, o.c., p 12.

³ See id., p. 385, perhaps a popular belief.

⁴ Paipp. 6, 5, see JAOS. 34, pp. 386f.

⁵ See also my Stilistische Studie, p. 47.

⁶ For the simile in a climax see § 31.

⁷ See WHITNEY-LANMAN, pp. cxluff.

mahī bhūtānām garbham ādadhe | evā dadhāmī te garbham , the verb also occurs 1d, and the simplex 1c, 3a, b, d, 4d. Here the effect of a stupendous event in nature is magically transferred, the prototype of the 'setting' of all 'embryos' is in the protasis of the simile. See also AV 3, 6, 3 (cp Kauś 48, 3), where identity of action is underlined by repetition of the verb. In 6, 17, a sūkta against premature birth, which consists of four stanzas in refrain-form, in the verb *dādhāra* in the *yathā*-protasis and *evā te dhriyatām* the meaning is repositied. See also 3, 6, 3, 6, 70. With responsio, which needs not be a rhetorical device, 7, 50, 1. — Cp 6, 72, 9, 1, 11–13, 12, 2, 25. — On the contrary, 4, 39, from the point of view of sūkta-building, is cunningly devised: 4 times 2 stanzas.¹

After this digression on the function of the simile in exactly formulated magical incantations, I proceed to the part it plays in the scientific demonstrations of the Brāhmanas. In these texts² the greater part of the similes are *yathā*—*evam*-similes with which the authors intend to elucidate difficult questions in their demonstrations by pointing to more familiar things or events. See e.g. Jaim. Br. 1, 165³ *tad yathā vā adah samudraṃ prasnāya dvīpam vṛttvopotsnāya viśrāmyann āsta, evam ha vā etan nūdhanam upetya kāmam viśrāmyanta āsīrann astuvānās*, ibid. no 1⁴. More than once some words or ideas of the upameya are found in the upamāna, as well especially the verb, e.g. Jaim. Br. no 168, p. 220, 33⁴ *tad etena kṛtsnena brahmanā yathā carmaṇā kuḍīkaṇṭakāṇ prāvṛtyātīyād evam evaitat saṃvatsarasya vyāptam prāvṛtyātīyanti*, no 130 beginning; TS. 7, 5, 3, 2.⁵ At intervals the parallelism is fairly complete, see TS. 5, 2, 8, 5; 7, 5, 9, 2 *yathā bandhān mumucānā utkrodam kurvata evam eva tad yajamānā utkrodam kurvata*.

This antique type of sentence-structure has been preserved in many a language especially in formulas and in texts, in which an exact wording is appreciated. Often in Manu: 2, 218; 6, 90, 7, 129, 8, 44, etc. Among later authors, in the first place the "rough, but vigorous" Aśvaghoṣa has a considerable number of this kind

¹ I refer to text and translations.

² At least, as far as I have perused them for this purpose.

³ CALAND, Auswahl (see above), p. 63, no. 55.

⁴ CALAND, Auswahl.

⁵ See also HIRZEL, o.c., p. 56, n. 22.

of sentences S 14, 49, cp also d, 14, 38 *śaravyah sa tu dosā-
ṇām yo hīnah smrtivarmanā | ranasthah pratiśatrūnām vīhīna va
varmanā*

§ 56 As for the difference between similes with the particle *iva* and those with *yathā*, it is well known¹ that, if the standard of comparison is expressed by a full sentence, *yathā* is used, and that *iva* does not introduce a sentence² Except a notice of BOL-
LENSEN³ and a remark by RENOU⁴, who says “*yathā* introduit
des comparaisons plrs développées, et insiste sur la notion
d’équivalence”, I cannot recollect any further remark about this
point It seems to me that in post-vedic literature the difference
has as a rule become less great⁵, in the older texts however
yathā points, as far as I see, in the very first place to essential or
modal agreement or correspondence, *iva* to a subjective resem-
blance The use of the particle *yathā* in oaths and solemn state-
ments⁶ and its meaning “so far as”⁷, which even may develop
into a causal meaning on the one hand the use of *iva* to denote
germ. “etwa, gleichsam”, eng. “rather, almost, as if it were, so to
say”⁸, its being used as a particle to express some interest taken
in the question by the speaker⁹ and its being connected with
verbs meaning “appear, be like, look”¹⁰ on the other hand, corro-
borate this distinction. The relative scarcity of *iva* in Vedic
prose and the fact that in ‘objective comparisons’, such as the
magical and didactical, *yathā* is the usual particle are in keeping
with it. In my opinion the difference between *iva* and *yathā* is
especially clear in the Atharvaveda. as for *iva* see e.g. 1, 5, 2, 1, 14
1, 2, 5, 6, 12, 3, 13, 1; 5, 20, 11, as for *y.* the above-quoted texts.
Of course, there are passages that are less clear: 1, 3, 7–8, 2, 27, 5,
6, 15, 3 has *yathā ... iva* in 2 ‘similes’ (cp. Paipp.)

¹ See J. S. SPEYER, Sanskrit Syntax, §§ 430ff., Vedische und Sanskrit
Syntax, §§ 118, 230.

² See, however, L. RENOU, Grammaire sanscrite, p. 520

³ In his edition of the Vikramorvaśīya (1846), pp. 273ff.

⁴ O.c., p. 520.

⁵ Even Manu 3, 181. *iva ... tathā*

⁶ See above, § 47.

⁷ SPEYER, Sanskrit Syntax, § 470, Rem. 1.

⁸ See the examples quoted by B. DELBRÜCK, Altindische Syntax,
p. 477, Petersb. Worterb., I, 818f.

⁹ SPEYER, S.S. § 409, 3

¹⁰ See above, § 6

§ 57. A quite natural short simile may be amplified, such an amplification need not have an artificial character. The simile *as a mother her son*¹ AV 18, 2, 50, 3, 50 *mālā putram yathā sicā*, 'as a mother her son with her hem', 11, 4, 10 *pitā putram iva priyam*², cp RV 10, 22, 3, RV 10, 149, 4 *vāśreva vatsam sumanā duhānā*, but AV 12, 3, 37 in an amplified form *vāśrevosrā taruṇam stanasyum imam devāso abhikrnota* Bhāsa, Vās 1 15 + a student says 'after the departure of the king the village became desolate like the sky when the moon and stars have set', . *prositānaksatracandram iva nabho ramanīyah*, this text, however, is perhaps an instance of a somewhat long (and retouched) form of a natural simile, but is not to be put on a par with the preceding texts

A simile such as Bhāsa, Pratimā 3, 10 (śloka) *ayodhyām atavībhūtām pitrā bhrātrā ca varjitām | pipāsārto nudhāvām ksīnatoyām nadīm iva* need not be artificial, it has prolepsis of the word *pipāsārto*. Neither is Rām 4, 18, 51 a deliberate artificiality *sa mamādarśanād dīno | tatāka iva pītāmbur udaśosam gamiṣyati* (cp Kāl K 8, 37), the commentary (Rāma) has remarked already. *sa mamādarśanāc chosam gamiṣyati*, attractio

Occasionally the combination of two similes gives rise to remarks Rām. 4, 58, 17 the vulture Sampāti, consumed by emotion, narrates, how he has seen Rāvana bearing Sītā through the air *sūryaprabheva śailāgre tasyāḥ kauṣeyam uttamam | asite rāksase bhāti yathā vidyud vāmbare*. It is a well-known fact that especially in colloquial speech blending of images, constructions etc. is not rare³.

Occasionally two similes are found in one verse⁴, but in such a manner that a long one stands at the beginning, a short one at the end: see e.g. Mbh. 7, 2, 12 *nipātite śāntanave mahārathe divākare bhūtaḥ āsthite yathā | na pārthivāḥ soḍhum alaṃ dhanañjayam giripravodhāram ivānilaṃ drumāḥ*, this is a special case of accumulation of similes, at the root of which lies, in normal language, extraordinary emotion. In certain circumstances this kind of utter

¹ See §§ 18f. AV. 18, 3, 50 = RV 10, 18, 11.

² See § 24.

³ See e.g. W. HAVERS, Handbuch der erklärenden Syntax, 1931. pp. 82ff., L. BLOOMFIELD, Language, London, 1935, pp. 422ff.

⁴ See §§ 35ff.

ances is quite natural, e g neth ze zag haar man liggen afgeslacht als een beest, en na een korte sprakeloosheid barstte ze los en ging te keer als een bezetene, but it is apt to develop into a poetical artifice.

§ 58 When the particle of comparison is at the end of the sentence, suspense may be aroused¹ See e g AV 5, 8, 8 *yathendra udvācanam labdhvā cakre adhas padam | kṛṇve 'ham adharāms tathā amūm śaśvatībhyah samābhyah*, note the position of the words *t* and *amūm* Rām 4, 24, 35 *svarge 'pi śokam . mayā vinā prāpsyati . | . vidhakanyārahito yathā tvam | |*

As far as I see, repetitions such as ChUp. 6, 9, 1f are confined to the longer periods of intellectual or consciously constructed speech *yathā saumya . nististhanti . gamayanti*, (2) *te yathā labhante .. iti, evam eva khalu . viduh . iti*, 8, 1, 5 f.

In a number of similes the verb of the upamāna seem to have been transferred into the upameya. In fact the verb in the upameya is used metaphorically. See e g Mbh 7, 8, 8 *vyadhamat pāṇḍavānīkam abhrānīva sadāgatih*, "he blew away (i.e dispersed) the troops . as the wind the clouds", the simile has its original freshness, cp 1 138, 21 See also 7, 14, 77, BhG 7, 7, Manu 7, 20, Bhāsa, Y 1, 16.²

Of course, not only the similes expressed by means of the particles *iva* and *yathā* should be studied, but also the other kinds of upamā, which are enumerated e.g. by Dandin, Kāvyaḍarśa. 2, 57-65. Here I wish to draw the attention only to a kind of simile, which in the Indian works on poetics is usually not reckoned among similes a counterpart of the so-called copulative simile, to which I intend to devote a short paper elsewhere. A fine instance is e g Bhāsa, Yaug 1, 18. from wood springs fire when it is pierced, the earth gives water when dug, for men that display energy nothing is impossible.

Sometimes a tautological *iva* is found. Mbh. 7, 22, 4, 26, 63. 8, 14, 39, Rām. 4, 24, 16, 34, 3; Mrcch. p. 142, 26, etc

§ 59. In classical texts authors like to elaborate a comparison in detail and to dwell on them in a number of points of agreement.³ *Asv. S. 6, 9; Kāl. Māl. 1, 6⁴; 3, 21; cp. R. 1, 30, 16, 26*

¹ Cp. also my remark AO 17, p. 139.

² For the type AV. 6, 54, 1 ... *kṣatram ... vr̥ṣṭer iva vardhayā trnam*, see BERGAIGNE, Mél. Rénier, p. 78.

³ See also HILLEBRANDT, Kālidasa, pp. 117; 119. Cp. e g. DANDIN, Kāvyaḍ. 2, 43ff.

⁴ Cp. KALE (1918), Notes, p. 14.

Here too instances of a similar detail-comparison may be taken, from prae-classic texts ChUp 3, 15, 1 *antariksodarah kośah / bhūmibudhno* . / *diśo hy asya sraktayah / dyaur asyottaram bīlam*, 3, 1, 1¹ Instances from other sources a detailed comparison between man and monkey in a work of the French poet Rabelais², a Lithuanian folk-song *die Sonne geht auf, und beginnt ihren Lauf am Himmel, sie zählt alle Sterne, jedoch einer fehlt . die Mutter geht über den Hof u z a Tochter, j e f* etc³

§ 60 As in Bhāsa's Avimāraka, 5, 1 + the vidūṣaka says about a maiden (pr) *even so she delights the eye like a digit of the new moon*, Avimāraka interrupts him *atīpandita va*, "(these words) are too bookish!" Here the stylistic value of the simile is expressed in the text itself But a little before this part (5, 1) in an upajāti-stanza A himself had said *she shines with natural charm, like a sacred text without the application* From the mouth of Rāvana, disguised as a religious mendicant, we hear, Pratiṃā 5, 7, a comparison with oblations Hence we may conclude that an unusual, far-fetched, learned upamāna occurs in different circumstances at times as a hyperbolic expression⁴, when the speaker wants to utter extraordinary feelings, then again when he wishes to display or to promulgate knowledge and learning or to give a certain cachet to himself Although it is difficult to set a fixed standard, I do not hesitate to say that this sort of simile has often been used in an artificial way, as an 'ornament' See e.g. Aśv Bc. 6, 31 ... *nārhasi . vihātum* | . *rājānaṃ saddharmam va nāstikah*; 32, 7, 38, 13, 47, 50 *na ... rṣim dadarśa kāmātmakah śreyo vopadiṣtam*, S. 2, 60, the upamānas contain allusions to moral precepts and so on See also S 2, 62, 4, 31. Kāl. Māl. 1, 10 the two masters of the art of gesticulation ... wish to have an interview with Your Majesty, *like two (dramatic) sentiments appearing in a bodily form*; 1, 14, Urv. 1, 12; 2, 22; 5, 19; Ragh 1, 4, 16 *he was to his subjects at once unapproachable and inviting as the ocean is on account of its monsters and gems*; 1, 88, 5, 63; Kum 1, 18, 5, 52, 7, 53. Sometimes the learned or artificial character appears in the first place

¹ Cp H. WELLER, in Festgabe-Garbe, p 63.

² P. DE LA JUILLIÈRE, Les comparaisons dans Rabelais, Diss. Bonn 1911, pp. 9f.

³ VAN DER MEULEN, o c., p. 114, cp. also pp 42; 79, 96

⁴ Above, § 10, see also Rām. 4, 34, 5, Kāl. Śak. 1, 6

from the chosen words *Aśv* *Bc* 5, 3 *prayayaṁ ketum iva drumābjaketuh*, with adnominatio, *d* means "the moon"; 8, 60 *vicakravākeva rathāṅgasāhvayā*, 'like the duck that has her name after a part of a chariot, being deprived of her male', *Kāl Ragh.* 3, 30 *tatāra vidyāḥ pavanātipātibhīr dīśo haridbhīr haritām vṛṣavah*, 2, 29¹, *Dandin*, *Dśkc* p. 97, 4 Then the well-known similes token from grammar ² e.g. *Bhār.*, *Kīr.* 13, 19

Here I also make mention of artificial play on the sound of words and suchlike ornaments *Rām* 4, 21 *1 nṛpatitām tārām cyutām tārām ivāmbārāt*, 23, 20 *dhārā iva dharādharāt* *Aśv* *Bc.* 8, 24 . *mahiṣī mahīpateḥ pranastavatsā mahīśiva vatsalā*, a play on the double meaning of *mahiṣī*, a play with adnominatio 8, 43 *gato nṛdevaḥ sa hi devī devavat*, 75, 77, 13, 62, 71, etc. *Aśvaghōṣa* has a special liking for this ornament ³ *Kāl. Kum* 3, 43 (all). Double meaning of the same word: *Rām* 4, 28, 7

Here follow some texts containing a figure which is there undoubtedly artificial, I mean the comparison in connection with ambiguity ⁴ *Aśv. S.* 1, 43 it reads *pāṇdurātītālasumukhaṁ suvibhaktāntarāpaṇam | harmyamālāparikṣiptam kuṁṣim himagīrīva*, where the *pādas* a-c should be translated twice, once as adjectives to the city mentioned in 41, and once, with other meanings, to the *upamāna* in *d* "having . upper storeys and . bazaars, and encompassed by a row of palaces", like a valley of the *Himālayas* having tops like . . watchtowers and . interior wealth and enc. by uplands like palaces", see also 1, 48⁵, *Kāl. Śak.* 7, 18. where *pāda* c should be translated twice; ⁶ *Bhār. Kīr.* 13. 14 f, *Kād.* p. 436 etc. Yet, in essence this device reaches back to a well-known popular pun. *dat is zo vast* (1. "sure, certain", 2. "immovable") *als een muts met zeven keelbanden; hy is zo groen* (1. "silly, ignorant", 2. "green") *als gras*, "he is as green as grass."⁷ Cp. e.g. *Ind Spr.*⁵ 7181 *sauhr̥dena parityuktam nihsnehakhalavat tyajet*

Another kindred type is that in which the subject is a com-

¹ For particulars see the commentaries.

² See e.g. *HILLEBRANDT*, *Kalidasa*, p. 118.

³ Cp. *DANDIN*, *Kāvyaḍ.* 2, 29.

⁴ See *JOHNSTON*, *Translation*, p. 5, n.

⁵ Cp. *JOHNSTON*, l.c.

⁶ Cp. also the edition of *Kāle-Shembavanekar*, *Bombay* 1934, *Notes*, p. 173.

⁷ See also *BERENS*, o.c., p. 223.

pound Bhār Kīr 4, 28 *vṛpāndu samvyānam vānīloddhatam
nirundhatīḥ saptapalāśajam rajah | anāvīlonmīlītabānacalsusah
sapuṣṣpahāsā vanarājīyosītaḥ*

§ 61. It goes without saying that a considerable number of similes, especially those that have become fixed formulas may not unfrequently impress us as if they were employed by the authors as verse-fillers when they had nothing better to say¹ Especially in the Mahābhārata this is the case cp 7, 14, 86 *aīhnam sahasā sarve samantān nīśītaḥ śarīḥ | abhyākīran
mahārāja jaladā va parvatam*, 18, 24, 26, 16 12, 217, 12, mostly in the d-pāda Such d-pāda's are often found in more than one place *śāndūla va kuñjaram* Mbh. 7, 14, 67, 15, 8 — See also Rām 4, 15, 19, perhaps also Aśv Bc. 6, 36, 13, 5, S 2, 57 b Also in Kālidāsa's Raghuvamśa we find a great predilection for a comparison in the d-pāda, but with a difference more individual, more artful and elaborate, profounder in meaning, e g R. 1, 16 Another point is that kāvya poetry often dwells at great length on the painting of details, which do not bear on the essential points of the narration Further an equalization may carry along a comparison

§ 62 By the side of similes expressing a comparison by means of words we find equalizations and identifications.² Although it is not my intention to treat these 'figures', I should like to make a few observations however Sometimes incorrect views have been uttered about equalizations. So long as an equalization is the expression of something that is believed to be an objective fact, so long the name 'metaphor' is not applicable. Now, this belief varies according to cultural and other circumstances Some primitive men call a goitre a toad because they believe it to be a toad³. Similar statements are met with in ancient Indian literature⁴. stars are the lights of virtuous men who go to the heavenly world etc Then, we have the so-called 'figurative' or

¹ See also, with regard to German literature, PONGS, o c, I, p 174

² See above

³ K. BETH, in Handwörterbuch des deutschen Aberglaubens VI, 211. Also THURNWALD, in EBERT, Reall. der Vorgeschichte, X, p 307, P. BEYER, in MERKER-STAMMLER, Reallexikon der deutschen Literatur, II, p. 340. The explanations of H. WERNER, Die Ursprünge der Metapher, Leipzig 1919, pp. 10ff.; 31ff. are worth reading.

⁴ I refer to H. WELLER, Zu einigen Metaphern des Rīg-Veda, ZII. 5, p. 178, und Über Vergleichen im R.V., Festgabe-Garbe, pp. 54ff.

'metaphorical use of words. In English, e.g., they say *he is a sly fox*, by the side of a simile *he is as cunning as a fox* or *as cunning as a weasel*. This sort of metaphor is very popular and belongs to ordinary speech in every language¹. Further, we find expressions such as lat *utres inflati ambulamus*², 'we walk like inflated bags', but here both in English and in other languages such as German ('wir wandeln wie aufgeblasene Schlauche') we must use a simile to translate the Latin words, which consider persons to be identical with things (persons, of course, if the case should arise) only with regard to one function.

Primitive man was, in former times too, forced to express his thoughts in all kinds of figurative speech, metaphors and the like³, which means, in the same language as our poets, and because he was forced to do so, it has more than once been said, that the language of primitive man was poetry, or at least figurative or allegorical. But this is not correct⁴. It is wrong to contend that only poets make use of metaphors. Poetic metaphor is on a large scale an outgrowth of the metaphor of ordinary speech. "The picturesque saying that 'language is a book of faded metaphors' is the reverse of the truth for poetry is rather a blazoned book of language"⁵. The metaphorical use of words is in all languages a phenomenon of the utmost importance. As was already stated by CICERO⁶ and QUINTILIANUS⁷, the peasant and the illiterate man, in short any ordinary speaker of a language makes use of metaphors. And also learned men and philosophers who try to find out the essence of all things have recourse to them.

A second error with regard to metaphors is to consider them as abridged similes. Both psychically and historically this view is incorrect⁸. Moreover, it would be wrong to treat all 'metaphors'

¹ See for instance H. PAUL, *Prinzipien der Sprachgeschichte*⁵ (1920), §§ 68f; F. BRUNOT, *La pensée et la langue*, pp. 77ff.

² Borrowed from J. B. HOFMANN, *Lateinische Umgangssprache*² (1936), p. 158.

³ See also the views of O. JESPERSEN, *Language*, XXI, § 11.

⁴ See also my *Stilistische Studie over Atharvaveda*, p. 22.

⁵ L. BLOOMFIELD, *Language*, p. 443.

⁶ CICERO, *Orat.* 24, 81.

⁷ QUINTILIANUS, *Inst. or.* 8, 6, 4.

⁸ See e.g. E. ELSTER, *Prinzipien der Literaturwissenschaft II* (1911), p. 119, A. H. GARDINER, *The theory of speech and language*, p. 167.

alike. Here too, in different times, environments, stages of culture, in different sorts of language and literature etc things that seem to be alike are not necessarily alike

In ancient Indian literature we often find a simile by the side of a metaphor¹ AV 7, 50, 6, a difficult text, full of technical gambling-phrases: a *atidīvā jayati*, "a superior player, he wins", b *kṛtam va śvaghnī vi cinoṭi kāle*, "he divides in time the winnings like a gambler". In a stanza with which they intended to ward off poison (cp Kauś. 29, 5), 5, 13. 3: a *bull is my cry*, but 5, 20, 2 and 3 *the drum has thundered like a lion, like a bull*. In the same way 4, 8, 4, 19, 46, 5, 8, 5, 12 *he is (becomes) a tiger*, but 4, 36, 6 *vyāghro va*, 3, 3, 3 *śyeno bhūtvā*, cp 6, 48, 1, 7, 41, 1, but 7, 70, 3 and 5, 30, 9 *like (a) falcon(s)*, 1, 25, 2 (cp 3) — 5, 22, 2, 7, 73, 1 (cp 4, 34, 4) — 7, 62, 1. See also RV. 1, 48, 5 — 1, 92, 11, 1, 73; 1 — 1, 13, 1 etc AV 8, 6, 7b *bhrātā bhūtvā pteva ca* is probably an instance of 'Satzhaplogogie'². — Not unfrequently the author passes from comparison to metaphor or the reverse RV 2, 3, 6 *night and day ... like two gay weavers .. two good milch-cows, rich in milk*

In the Brāhmaṇas³ we meet with many an interesting instance of identification and comparison Kauś Br 7, 8⁴, Ait Br 5, 30, 1, Jaim Br. no 34 end (p 40 Caland) *vayo vai vāmadevyam yad rcam upasprśed, yathā vayo 'ntariksena patad vrksam ṛcchet, tādrk tat*; no 164 (transl. p. 213) *yathā vai śāśa evaṃ yañño yo vai śāśam .*, but cp. no 143 (transl. p 175 top), Pañc. Br. 7, 6, 15 B and R are two big trees, but Jaim Br 29 *yathā mahāvṛksau* Cp. also Jaim. Br. no 179, 168, p. 220 (transl p 224 top), no 98, 112, 140 end.

A simile used as an introduction to a metaphor seems to me to be employed consciously JBr no 88 end *yathā ha girau jyotir bhāyād evaṃ tasyām janatāyām bhātrī yasyām bhavati*⁵, compare, in an advertisement, neth *als een rots in de branding kunt U de stormen des tijds trotseren*, at the beginning of a discourse. *het*

¹ Cp. also D. WESTERMANN, Die Ghdyi-Ewe in Togo, p. 115.

² For this interesting phenomenon, see A. DEBRUNNER, Dissimilation ganzer Worter, in Mélanges-VAN GINNEKEN (1937), p 67

³ See also OLDENBERG, Vorwissenschaftliche Wissenschaft, p 115.

⁴ Cp e g Ait Br 2, 37, 1, Kauś 14, 4

⁵ Cp. p 92.

karakter van X vertoont, als een geslepen juweel, meerdere facetten.

— The simile after the metaphor Bhāsa, *Abhis* 4, 18

§ 63 As I have thus far mainly spoken of the shades of meaning and the stylistic value of various similes, room should be reserved here for a necessary complement, viz the use of the same comparison in different texts and various circumstances. As is well known, in Vedic literature a considerable number of similes, either relatively short ones which do not occupy entire pādas, or such as fill up a pāda, have become formulas expressing a familiar idea in a fixed form. For example *samudram iva sindhavaḥ* RV 8, 6, 35 etc.¹ Now, a good many of them are mere phrase, as in this case the 'sea' expresses the general idea of 'very great expanse'², they may be used in different connections. Not only Indra's belly swelling up (RV 1, 8, 7), but also his strength increasing by the songs of praise (RV 8, 6, 35) is compared with the sea which swells up or is filled by the rivers. We must, however, be aware of the fact that being strengthened by songs and swelling up by soma are very kindred notions to the Vedic Indians, which with regard to aim and effect are mostly identical³. As far as I see it is not necessary to suppose that in this group of texts any of the expressions, e.g. *samudra iva pin-vate* (Indra's belly) is the original one, the others representing merely secondary employments. This would be only a possibility. It is likely that at the root of these expressions is a popular saying ± 'as extensive as the sea' (cp. AV 3, 29, 6 etc., *Ved. Conc.* 981), whereupon one or more poets have built longer expressions which, becoming common property, have been varied. I do not believe that, *dyaur na prathivā śavaḥ* being said (RV 1, 8, 5) to indicate that Indra's power is "as extensive as the sky", meaning 'very great', the use of the simile in this connection need be the primary use, as perhaps might be concluded from BLOOMFIELD's remarks⁴.

Nor should I like to adhere to the following judgment by SCHAYER⁵. "viele von diesen (d.h. magischen) Gleichnissen sind

¹ See BLOOMFIELD, *Rig-Veda Repetitions*, p. 582; 574

² See above, § 12

³ See my paper *The meaning of vedic bhūsatī*, pp. 10; 14 etc.

⁴ O c., p. 573. See above, §§ 12f.

⁵ St. SCHAYER, *Zeitschr. f. Buddhismus*, 6 (1925), p. 299

spater, ihres magischen Sinnes entkleidet, zu rhetorischen Alam-kāra's des Kāvya-Stils geworden'', if these words should be interpreted in such a way that such a simile came into being as a magical one and has been borrowed from atharvanic texts by poets of later generations to be mere ornaments and nothing but ornaments. A propos of AV. 6, 8, 1 (to win the love of a woman) as the creeper (*hbugā*) has embraced the tree so do you embrace me, SCHAYER remarks "so ... ist die Liane stets das Sinnbild der geliebten Frau geblieben" A well known popular saying was *sa tasya chāyeva*, 'he is like his shadow'¹, or "to follow like his shadow" RV 1, 73, 8 (to Agni) *chāyeva viśvam bhūvanam sisaksi*, Bhāsa, Prat 2, 10 d (śl); after a detailed description, summarizing *chāyeva tām bhūpatiṃ anvagacchat*, Kāl R 2, 6 Dandin, Dśkc. p 51, 5 Is this saying only explicable as an "ihres magischen Sinnes entkleidetes . . Gleichnis"? In magical sphere the shadow of a man, which is a striking image of himself, plays, indeed, an important part it is often considered a form of his soul, in some degree it is that man himself², when it is pierced the death of that man can be compassed³ Are the magic acts primary here with respect to such a saying? What is primary the shadow of man as the magical 'Abbild seines Wesens' or as the 'unzertrennliche Begleiter'⁴? Although the answer seems not to be difficult, one might object that 'to follow like his shadow' originally meant 'like his soul or like his ego etc' and that the comparison was at first used only in connection with magic or only in magical sphere But this is pure speculation. Other properties of the shadow were observed too AV 8, 6, 8 *the sun has made them vanish like a shadow*; here magic is out of the question To my mind both the popular sayings in many languages (eng *to shadow*⁵, germ *erwem wie sein Schatten folgen*, neth *als z'n schaduw volgen*, *schaduwven*, gr *σινά* and lat. *umbra*⁶ etc.

¹ VĀMANA, Kāvya 4, 2, 14 laukikyām.

² See HASTINGS, Encycl of Religion and Ethics, 11, 727, G. VAN DER LEEUW, Religion (1938), pp. 287f.

³ Kauś. 47, 55, CALAND, Altind. Zauberritual, p 166, cp. p 124, V. HENBY, La magie dans l'Inde antique, p 110.

⁴ See J. VON NEGELEIN, Bild, Spiegel und Schatten im Volksglauben, Arch. fur Relg. 5 (1902), pp. 1ff., esp 12ff.

⁵ See MURRAY's New English Dictionary, VIII, 2, p. 591, sub 8

⁶ Cp. A. KIESSLING-R. HEINZE, ad HORATIUS, Sat. 2, 8, 22.

etc.¹) and the belief that the shadow is an important form of the soul, on which the magical practices are founded, have their root in the same thing: reality seen by the eye and observed by the mind of impressionable man. The same resemblance may be seen time after time, but it depends on the circumstances whether the observation will give rise to a spoken utterance, and if so, in what form. For the magician or the man who 'thinks magically' for whom resemblance means identity and who study to put the knowledge of the identities into practice, such a simile is an instrument to attain their ends². The 'ordinary speaker' and the 'poet' use it in a different way. Of course by the side of the borrowing from the vast stock of the living language — to shorten my argumentation I do not go too far in other possibilities and well-known relations—, borrowing from literary sources is often possible and, in India especially in classic works, not unfrequently an established fact.

§ 64. In living languages it is already very difficult and generally impossible to trace the origin of a simile. Very often its first occurrence in a written record is not its birth. In ancient languages such investigations would be totally fruitless. The only things we can do are firstly to gather the instances of the image in the texts and to study the manners in which it is used, its stylistic value, secondly to gather all data that may throw light upon the simile. In the case of the creeping plant and the tree and wife and lover or husband (see e.g. Mbh. 12, 145, 5; Rām 4, 22, 31; Aśv. S. 4, 33; Kāl Māl 4, 13, Kum 3, 39; Rtus. 4. 10, Mārķ P. 21, 19, Venīs 1, 20) we should consider that the creeper without the tree is frequently an upamāna for a (slender) woman. cp e.g. Aśv. Bc 8, 28, 59; S 6, 28; Kāl Kum 3, 54, 7, 21, Bhār. Kir. 4, 15, Bhāsa, Avim. 3, 19 etc. (mark the variety in particulars!), and that the creeper is also an upamāna for the arm (*bhujalatā*), lightning (*vidyullatā*), eye-brows (*bhṛūlatā*) etc.³. and on the other hand that the belief that man and tree are essentially identical, or that there exists a similarity or a peculiar relation between the nature of man and that of the tree has taken

¹ See also C. MEINHOF, o.c., p. 140.

² As for the *lbuṇā* AV. 6, 8, 1 see Kauś. 35, 21 and AV. 2, 30; 6, 9; 6, 102.

³ See the dictionaries. See also VĀMANA, Kāvya. 4, 2, 14c.

root with many peoples¹; moreover, that especially in India the conception of plants and trees as animated beings has resulted in treating them as males and females that can be married² I refer only to the well-known scenes in the Śakuntalā 1, 21 + and 4, 12 + , where a navamālkā or priyangu creeper, being Ś's 'creeper-sister', is united with a mango-tree, and where Ś. is said to think *as the creeper has been united to a worthy tree, so may I too get a worthy husband*,³ and that, lastly, the tender affection of the devoted wife comes out in many a text⁴

When a simile is studied in this way the compounds and other expressions should not be forgotten, e.g. by the side of the plastic *pānabhyām ca kucāu kācit suvarṇakalāśopamau | upaguhya* (Rām. 5, 10, 47) the stereotypical *kucakumbhau* or *kucakalāśa-Māgha*, Śisup. 7, 48, 73; 10, 32; 47, with variation 8, 51, 53,⁵ here the inversion *ghaṭastana-*, Kāl Kum. 5, 14 is noteworthy

§ 65. At the instigation of ERNST LEUMANN OTTO WALTER wrote a useful booklet 'Übereinstimmungen in Gedanken, Vergleichen und Wendungen bei den indischen Kunstdichtern von Vālmiki bis auf Māgha.'⁶ Of course, his collection is not exhaustive. The author did not intend "festzustellen, ob dieser oder jener Gedanke oder Vergleich auch außerhalb der sogenannten Kunstdichtung, also etwa im Veda oder im Mbh oder in der buddh. Lit., anzutreffen sei"⁷. This work should be done, and moreover

¹ See e.g. R. VAN DER MEULEN, Naturvergleiche in den Liedern . der Litauer (see above), passim; Handwörterbuch d. deutschen Aberglaubens, I (1927), p. 955, and especially W. MANNHARDT, Wald- und Feldkulte, 1904-5, passim, for India e.g. OLDENBERG, Religion des Veda, pp. 262f.

² I refer to FRAZER, The golden bough³, 1911, II, pp. 24ff.

³ A parallel in Netherl. literature FRED. VAN EEDEN, De kleine Johannes, ch. 6 *Heb my lief, heb my lief! omvat my als de hoprank den boomstam*, .. VAN DER MEULEN, o.c., says, p. 29, with reference to the Lithuanians "vor allen dingen wählt man zur apposition diejenigen pflanzen, tiere u.s.w., die in ihrer gesamterscheinung der art des menschlichen wesens zu entsprechen scheinen: *mädchen als lilie, schwam* ", see also pp. 49; 133. For man and tree, p. 52 etc Elsewhere ivy and tree, e.g. Euripides, Hek. 398

⁴ See also H. CH. CHAKRADAR, in Cultural Heritage of India, III, p. 197.

⁵ For a medieval German parallel J. J. MEYER, Trilogie altindischer Mächte und Feste der Vegetation, I, p. 170, n. 3.

⁶ Indica, herausg. von E. LEUMANN, Heft 3, Leipzig 1905.

⁷ WALTER, p. 32.

the images should be studied with regard to their appearance and their occurrence in the texts as 'Ausdruckswerte'. It should, e.g., be remarked that the well-known cakravākas, which play a part in other similes too (e.g. RV 2, 39, 3), as a model of mutual conjugal love, occur as early as AV 14, 2, 64 in the marriage texts. Indra do thou push together these two spouses like two c., *cakravākeva*¹, chiefly 'anschaulich-ausdruckverstärkend', in a very succinct form Rām 4, 30, 65 (*Sitā*) *cakravākīva bhartāraṃ prsthato 'nugatā vanam*, emotional etc.², in a manner that is simple and natural in itself³, but betrays conscious employment of 'sound-figures'. Aśv S 4, 2 *sa cakravākyeva hi cakravākas tathā sametaḥ priyayā priyārhaḥ*, as an intensifying addition⁴ id. 6, 22 *na sa tvad anyāṃ pramadām avartī svacakravākyā va-cakravākāḥ*, varied 6, 30 *sā cakravākīva bhrśaṃ cukūja śyenāgrapakṣakṣata-cakravākā*, "she, like a she-sheldrake, moaned when its mate has had the tip of its wing hurt by a hawk". It is clear that Aśvaghōṣa intentionally repeats the word and that 6, 30, he makes the word subservient to the expression of a sentiment by sounds and their combinations. The combinations *kr*, *gr*, the sounds *ś*, *s* and the long compound may express the sentiment caused by horrible events⁵. With a circumlocution of the name Aśv. Bc 8, 60 *tato dharāyām apatad yaśodharā*⁶ *vicakravākeva rathāṅgasāhvayā*; cp. 8, 29. In a phraseology hinting by means of a circumlocution. Kāl. Kum. 8, 51 *kim na vetsy sahadharmacārīṇaṃ cakravākasa-mavṛttim ātmanah*; in a less usual connection Mṛcch. 5, 5 *samsaktair va cakravākamithunair haṃsair praḍinair iva . . | tais tair ākṛtivistarair anugatair meghair* ..., where the notion of inseparability is expressed.⁷ Of the two breasts of a woman pressed together Aśv Bc. 8, 29; Dandin, Dśkc. (NS. 10), p. 40, l. 12.⁸

¹ As for *va*, see § 56.

² Cp §§ 16ff ; 27.

³ I refer to my Stilistische Studie over Atharvaveda, § 51.

⁴ See § 14

⁵ See e.g. DANDIN, Kāvyaḍ. 1, 72, MAMMATA, Kāvyaḍ. 8, 75

⁶ Yamaka!

⁷ See also Kāl. Me. 80, Māl. 5, 9.

⁸ Here I add some texts in which other similes spoken of in WALTER's booklet are found: Indradhvaja (W., pp. 11f.) Mbh. 7, 15, 29; 70, 14; 92, 72; see MEYER, Trilogie III, p. 105; COWELL, The Buddhacarita of A. Anecd. Oxon. 1893, p. XIV, like painted (W., pp. 12, 26, 30) Kāl. Urv. 2, 0, Śak. 4, 1+, Märk. P. 81, 31; Śukas. t orn

Often the variety of the forms of a simile is quite interesting. Manu 4, 191 has a fool sinks (into hell) as a cow into a bog. *panke gaur iva sīdati*, the same 8, 21, cp 11, 112; Aśv. Bc. 6, 26 writes *sīdati me ceto nadīpanka iva dvīpah*, S. 6, 32 quite simply *pankāvatīrneva ca samsasāda*; it is interesting to see that Mbh 12, 174, 26 has a longer form *śokapankārṇave magnā jīrnā vanagajā va*.

§ 66 Of course, one might quote a great number of passages,

p. 22, 15 +; the laughter of a river (W., pp. 13, 24, 28) cp Aśv S 4, 4, the serpent sloughing (W., pp. 15f.) Jam. Br. no 140 C., Manu 2, 79, Bhāsa, Cār. 3, 5, cp Vās 4, 2; Mrcch. 3, 9, the moth etc in the flame (W., pp. 16, 27) Mbh. 2, 17, 11, 6, 35, 29, 7, 22, 26, 9, 3, 27, Bhāsa, Cons 4, 5; see also Pet Wtb s.v. *śalabha-*, Aurvāgni (W., p. 27) cp Mbh. 7, 15, 5, Rām. 4, 15, 19, Mārķ. Pur. 21, 86, Kāl. Ś 3, 3; Bhav Uttarar 5, 8; cp. Dandin, Dśkc. p 49, l 21, the digit of the moon Bhāsa, Cār 1, 27, Vās. 3, 0, Consecr. 2, 11 +, Prat 7, 12; Av. 5, 11, Kāl Megh 87, Kum 4, 46, 5, 48, 7, 8, Harṣa, Nāg 2, 8, Dandin, Dśkc p 49, 10, Śukas t orn p. 13, 35 +, for the bird tied to a string see JOHNSTON, ad Aśv. S. 11, 59, a garland being worn and thrown away (see also DIWEKAR, o c, p 89), cp. Mbh 3, 269, 20; 4, 14, 11; Rām 6, 99, 42; Aśv. Bc 8, 83, Kāl Māl 3, 0 +, Śak 7, 24; a river that dashes or sweeps away the banks etc Bhāsa, Av. 3, 17 +, Aśv Bc. 13, 6, Kāl. Kum. 3, 6, 4, 6; 7, 53, a woman like a gazelle Mbh. 4, 14, 10, 15, 21, Aśv Bc. 5, 41; Bhāsa, Cār 1, 10, Mrcch 1, 17, for hissing serpents etc. Mbh cp. 1, 52, 5, 4, 17, 9, 5, 184, 11; Rām. 2, 20, 8, 23, 2, 6, 92, 42, as a thief at night R.V. 1, 191, 5; Aśv. Bc 8, 38; shining, etc. like the sun RV. 8, 34, 17, Nala 2, 29; 5, 43; Aśv. Bc 5, 43, Kāl. Kum. 3, 30, Mārķ P 69, 4, the osprey Nala 11, 20 (*kurarīm va vāsatīm*); Mbh. 1, 6, 12, 2, 70, 1; 11, 12, 10; 16, 18; Rām 4, 19, 28; Aśv. Bc 8, 51; Kāl R. 14, 68, Urv. 1, 2 +; Bhāg. Pur. 10, 90, 15, to cross to the other side with a ship RV. 1, 97, 7, AV. 4, 33, 7; TĀ. 6, 11, 2, TS 7, 5, 3, 2, Mbh. 4, 15, 21, 7, 1, 43; the moon, obscured or swallowed by Rāhu, Nala 16, 14; 17, 6, Bhāsa, Prat 6, 12; 7, 6, Kāl. Māl 2, 13 +; a gazelle frightened by a lion or a tiger Mbh. 7, 22, 11, Bhāsa, Cār. 1, 9, Abhūṣ. 2, 13; the *khadyota*- Mbh. 7, 15, 18, Bd. Pur. 1, 5, 7, 7, 4, the *kadalī* ("ein Bild der Hinfälligkeit", Pet. Wtb.) Mbh. 11, 17, 1, Aśv. Bc. 8, 24; 14, 6, firm as a mountain etc. RV. 1, 52, 2, Mbh. 7, 14, 36, 15, 7, 25, Aśv. S. 3, 7, cp. Bc. 8, 36; 10, 41, 13, 57; Mārķ. Par. 15, 57; like an arrow smeared with poison AV. 5, 18, 15, Rām. 2, 30, 23, Kāl. K 4, 25; princes like lions Nala 5, 3, Kāl R. 6, 3; face resembling a lotus Aśv. 4, 23; 6, 11; Bc. 8, 71; Kāl. K. 8, 23; the bird *cātaka*- Mbh. 12, 360, 6; Kāl. Māl. 2, 10 +; Dandin, Dśkc p 29, 10; the grass-stem of the *muṇḍya*- cp. Pet. Wtb. V, 821; a well-watered tree Manu 9, 255; Kāl. R. 1, 70; Ind. Spruche II, 980; the coast keeping the sea in check e.g. Mbh. 7, 16, 21; 25, 15. See also BÜHLER, Sitzungsberichte Wien, 122 (1890), XI, pp. 20; 25; 29; 42, 60; 63; 64.

where the fancy of the author or poet¹, who no more than the general people is disinterested whilst describing reality, and who, no more than the ordinary speaker, knows the reserve which cultured man, intellectual man, imposes upon himself in speaking, has had an important share in creating the simile, even (which is very often the case) when he makes use of sayings and expressions that are already well-known. Then by adding one or more words, by elaborating the saying, by casting light on details, by using the simile in an unusual connection or by means of a happy variation, a paronomastic figure, a play on words, a different wording etc., he is able to put it in a new light, to 'give it a rub', to make it young or vivid again "Plus une image est poussée dans le détail, plus aussi elle est concrète, sensible, imaginative, et nous ajoutons, plus elle repose sur une création individuelle"² Just like the ordinary speaker, a poet or an author uses similes to make the description of his subject more responsive to his emotions and to the reactions which reality rouses in his feelings and which he intends to rouse in his hearers and readers. By means of the images he transforms reality with something of himself³ The poet extends the innate ability of man to see resemblances Reproducing reality as he sees it, he projects his inner life into it Just like the people a true poet abandons the plain statement and "schweift hinüber in die Bahn von Analogievorstellungen"⁴, especially poets possessing a rich imagination think in images and utter themselves by means of them when they intend to say exactly what they feel "Seine (viz of the poet) Anschauung ist sofort bereit, es auf ein Ähnliches oder Verwandtes in der Vorstellung zurückzuführen, es fällt ihm . . . etwas dabei ein In den poetischen Vergleichen begnügt sich der Dichter, die Eigenart der Erscheinung des Vorgangs in ein möglichst helles Licht zu setzen. Die lebhafteste Phantasie geht gleichsam mit ihm durch"⁵. Very often the author uses his image consciously, nay, deliberately with specific rhetorical intention; he adopts the originally

¹ Of course, it is not possible to say where 'the poetical simile' begins'

² CH. BALLY, *Traité de stylistique française*², pp 198f. See e.g. VĀMANA, *Kāvya*. 4, 2, 2

³ See also W. SCHNEIDER, *Ausdruckswerte der deutschen Sprache*, 1931, p 43.

⁴ E. ELSTER, *Prinzipien der Literaturwissenschaft*, II (1911), p. 119.

⁵ K. BORINSKI, *Deutsche Poetik*, § 37

natural device as a deliberate means of enhancing the effect of his work. Many a time it sprouts forth more from fancy and imagination¹ than from feeling and sentiment²; often, however, its outstanding features are a greater depth, a greater extent and elaboration, a going into detail³. The manner in which an author builds on depends considerably on the bent of his nature and individual preference. The one has an inclination towards a broad delineating of his subject, on which the thoughts of the hearer may linger — and, in fact, the simile lends itself quite well to reflection — the other towards an unexpected typifying or characterizing, a third likes melody and harmony of sounds, another again a veiling of thoughts or exclusiveness or a far-fetched individualism. A number of authors like to rouse ever and anon parallels in nature or history, others always think and write statically and contemplatively; others again readily elucidate or illustrate the things said, or strive after 'Steigerung' or excess, after show and parade.⁴

§ 67. But very often we are not able to distinguish between common language and poetical fiction. Thus, at first sight, we might consider Aśv S. 2, 54 *divi dundubhayo nedur divyatām maruṭām iva*, "in the heavens drums thundered as if the storm gods were at play" as a nice example of individual creation, but, to my mind, it is very likely that our poet has borrowed it from the mouth of the people⁵. The sight of a lamp in darkness, Mrcc 1, 10, which appears to be a product of 'poetical' fiction, may be a popular image. And how about Aśv S. 2, 52 *sācalā pracacālorvī tarāṅgābhīhateva nauḥ*?; has here only the adnominatio sprung from the poet's brain? 6, 37, however, the elaboration is undoubtedly a product of individual imagination: surrounded by women on the roof of the palace the very slender woman seemed like the crescent moon in an autumn cloud encircled by flashes of light-

¹ See e.g. the examples by VĀMAṆA, l.c.

² For Arabian and Persian poets see H. RITTER, Über die Bildersprache Nizāmīs, Der Islam, Beiheft V (1927), p. 14.

³ See e.g. BALLY, o.c., § 206.

⁴ Cp. also MOOGK, in Zs. für Ästhetik und Kunstwissenschaft 7 (1912); GROOS, ibid. 9 (1914); KAINZ, ibid. 18 (1924).

⁵ „Wie es in einem Volkslied der Faroer heißt: „Donner ist die rote Trommel, die durch alle Lande schlägt“, Hdwtb. d. deutschen Aberglaubens, II, p. 312

ning the like 2, 65 *he departed at night . like a swan from a lake whose lotuses have been destroyed* (cp. Bhāsa, Abhis 6, 24). Individual associations or elaborations also Āśv Bc. 5, 56; 6, 57, Kāl-Megh. 19 (cp Kum 8, 69), 57. Rtus 2, 7, 3, 4, Mrech 5, 17 44 (with repetition of the same word), 5, 4 *dhārā . patati | chinna vāmbara patasya daśāḥ patanti* Bhav, Utt 1, 18 we find an idea which might have been expressed in a simple way, with unusual wording and a well-considered order of words *samayah yatra māṃ / samanandayat ... / tava mūrtimān iva mahotsavaḥ karah*

It is a matter of course that the long and elaborated simile in which the comparison has been sustained in detail¹ is in the main a product of individual fancy, so much the more the similes consisting of a series of ambiguous words. I quote only one beautiful instance. Kāl Kum. 3, 25 *kuberaguptām diśam usnaraśmau gantum pravrte samayam vilanghya | dig daksiṇā gandhavaham mukhena vyālīkanīśvāsam ivotsasarja*, Ragh 11, 20. Modelled on § 14 and elaborated e.g. Bhār Kīr 3, 43 *kurvan prayāmaksayam āyatīnām arkatvīśām akha vāvaśeśaḥ* See also id. 8, 10, 9, 17, 10, 34

On the other hand it is not possible to draw the line with respect to chronology and the various provinces of literature. In the Mbh, for instance, 'poetical' similes are met with². 7, 3, 1 Bhīma lying on his couch made of arrows is *mahāvātasamūhena samudram iva śositam*, see also 3 sqq., 2, 5 (long metre), 8, 27 (l.m.), 18, 16.

It goes without saying that in India too there have been similes which were originally created by poets and other authors and then adopted by the people

§ 68. Further should be noticed that aesthetical impressions are not constant quantities. The well-known Indian comparison with the full-moon, for instance, has for a modern European reader sometimes a comical effect; in medieval German literature, however, this was not the case³. The norm of florid language varies from people to people. Natural speech, consequently also similes employed in a natural way, may contain outstanding aesthetical elements. "In the recorded texts of primitive tradi-

¹ Compare also A. HILLEBRANDT, Kālidāsa, 1921, p. 119.

² See also OLDENBERG, Mahabharata, p. 165.

³ O. WEISE, Ästhetik der deutschen Sprache (1903), p. 124f.

tion and song there are many passages of unique vigor and beauty. The structure of the language often forces an assemblage of concepts that impresses us as a stylistic discovery"¹ Now, this aesthetical value may be borne in upon the mind of man, and individuals may cultivate it consciously and deliberately² Then they practise 'linguistic art'. This art is rooted in ordinary speech

Although I made on the foregoing pages many a remark about similes which, in my opinion, appear to be used in an 'artificial way', I wish to state here once more that we must distinguish between similes used in natural speech and by real poets, with whom they are utterances of internal experience³, and the artificial similes which are made in or out of season as 'ornaments'. When a simile wears out and is no longer alive for the poet or author, when it is no longer the only true expression, springing from an inner urge⁴, it develops into a traditional ornament. And when a poet 'gives it a rub' and elaborates it without being compelled by internal emotions, but only because he considers it proper, or because it is the fashion, or because the rules of a manual give him directions for adorning his work in this manner, or because of other external reasons⁵, — then the simile becomes an ornament as well, then it becomes a thing to be imposed on the language from a model, by preference from a classic one. Many a time this involves a conscious selection from the general store of expressions and possibilities of expressions of the language and an intentional contrasting with 'popular', 'common', 'vulgar' idiom, with ordinary speech⁶, "such poetry is the work of poets clever in describing things in a manner passing the comprehension of ordinary men"⁷.

We know that, also with regard to similes, Indian poetical art

¹ E. SAPIR, *Language*, p. 244

² Cp. e.g. J. WARNECK, *Studien über die Literatur der Toba-Batak*, *Mitteilungen des Seminars für oriental. Sprachen a. d. Universität Berlin*, 1899, p. 115

³ Cp. e.g. Ānandavardhana, *Dhvanyāla*. 2, 17; 18 (ZDMG. 56, pp. 609f.)

⁴ See e.g. TH. PLUSS, *Das Gleichnis in erzählender Dichtung*, Festschrift zur 49. Versammlung deutscher Philologen und Schulmänner. Basel 1907, pp. 42ff.

⁵ Cp. e.g. MAMMATA, *Kp.* 8, 66.

⁶ Cp. e.g. DANDIN, *Kāvya*. 2, 51 ff.; VĀMANA, *Kāvya*. 4, 2, 2.

⁷ MAMMATA, 1, 2.

passed through a development, that e.g. the author of the Rudra-dāman-inscription did not avail himself of opportunities for making similes, which later poets without doubt would have utilized¹, that authors living in former times often took 'poetic licenses', which younger generations would be consider as 'faults'². But the possibility of such a development exists from the moment when by reflection on linguistic phenomena people are forming an idea of 'correct speech'.

¹ G. BUHLER, o.c.; p. 51.

² See DIWEKAR, o.c., p. 86, § 3.